# Table of Contents

What Is AWS Step Functions? ................................................................. 1  
Overview of Step Functions ................................................................. 1  
Express Workflows ........................................................................... 1  
Service Integrations .......................................................................... 1  
Supported Regions ........................................................................... 2  
About Amazon Web Services ............................................................... 2  

Setting Up .......................................................................................... 3  
Prerequisites ..................................................................................... 3  
  Create an AWS Account ................................................................. 3  
  Create an IAM User ................................................................. 3  
  Get Your Access Key ID and Secret Access Key ............................ 4  

Setting Up Step Functions Local (Downloadable Version) .................. 5  
  Step Functions (Downloadable Version) on Your Computer .......... 6  
  Step Functions (Downloadable Version) and Docker .................... 7  
  Step Functions Local Configuration Options ............................ 8  
  Step Functions and AWS SAM CLI Local ............................... 9  

Getting Started ............................................................................... 13  
  Create a State Machine ............................................................. 13  
  Start a New Execution ............................................................ 14  
  Update a State Machine .......................................................... 15  
  Next Steps .................................................................................. 16  

Tutorials ......................................................................................... 17  
  Development Options .................................................................. 17  
    Step Functions Console ........................................................ 17  
    AWS SDKs ............................................................................. 18  
    Standard and Express Workflows ......................................... 18  
    HTTPS Service API ................................................................. 18  
    Development Environments .................................................... 18  
    Endpoints ................................................................................ 19  
    AWS CLI .................................................................................. 19  
    Step Functions Local ............................................................... 19  
    AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio .............................................. 19  
    AWS Serverless Application Model and Step Functions ............ 19  

Create a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda .......... 20  
  Step 1: Create an IAM Role for Lambda .................................. 20  
  Step 2: Create a Lambda Function .......................................... 21  
  Step 3: Test the Lambda Function ......................................... 21  
  Step 4: Create a State Machine ............................................. 22  
  Step 5: Start a New Execution ............................................. 23  

Creating a Lambda State Machine Using AWS CloudFormation .... 24  
  Step 1: Set Up Your AWS CloudFormation Template ................ 24  
  Step 2: Use the AWS CloudFormation Template to Create a Lambda State Machine ....... 28  
  Step 3: Start a State Machine Execution .................................. 31  

Creating an Activity State Machine ............................................... 32  
  Step 1: Create an Activity .................................................... 32  
  Step 2: Create a State Machine ............................................. 32  
  Step 3: Implement a Worker .................................................. 34  
  Step 4: Start an Execution .................................................... 35  
  Step 5: Run and Stop the Worker ......................................... 36  

Handling Error Conditions Using a State Machine ....................... 36  
  Step 1: Create an IAM Role for Lambda ................................. 37  
  Step 2: Create a Lambda Function That Fails ......................... 37  
  Step 3: Test the Lambda Function ......................................... 38  
  Step 4: Create a State Machine with a Catch Field ................. 38
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Poll for Job Status (Lambda, AWS Batch)</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create the State Machine and Provision Resources</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting an Execution</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Task Timer (Lambda, Amazon SNS)</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Callback Pattern Example (Amazon SQS, Amazon SNS, Lambda)</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create State Machine and Provision Resources</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lambda Callback Example</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage an Amazon EMR Job</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create the State Machine and Provision Resources</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start a New Execution</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example State Machine Code</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAM Example</td>
<td>191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start a Workflow within a Workflow (Step Functions, Lambda)</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create the State Machine and Provision Resources</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start a New Execution</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example State Machine Code</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamically Process Data with a Map State</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create the State Machine and Provision Resources</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subscribe to the Amazon SNS Topic</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add Messages to the Amazon SQS Queue</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start a New Execution</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example State Machine Code</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAM Example</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Train a Machine Learning Model</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create the State Machine and Provision Resources</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start a New Execution</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example State Machine Code</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAM Example</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tune a Machine Learning Model</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create the State Machine and Provision Resources</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start a New Execution</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example State Machine Code</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAM Examples</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process High-Volume Messages from Amazon SQS (Express Workflows)</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create the State Machine and Provision Resources</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trigger Execution</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example Lambda Function Code</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example State Machine Code</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAM Example</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selective Checkpointing Example (Express Workflows)</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create the State Machine and Provision Resources</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start a New Execution</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example State Machine Code for the Parent (Standard Workflows)</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example IAM Role for the Parent State Machine</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example State Machine Code for the Nested State Machine (Express Workflows)</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example IAM Role for Child State Machine</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Build an AWS CodeBuild Project (CodeBuild, Amazon SNS)</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create the State Machine and Provision Resources</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Start a New Execution</td>
<td>237</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example State Machine Code</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Best Practices</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Timeouts to Avoid Stuck Executions</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use ARNs Instead of Passing Large Payloads</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avoid Reaching the History Quota</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handle Lambda Service Exceptions</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Avoid Latency When Polling for Activity Tasks</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choosing Standard or Express Workflows</td>
<td>242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table of Contents</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotas ................................................................................................................ 243</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotas for Standard Workflows ........................................................................... 243</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotas Related to State Machine Executions ...................................................... 244</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotas Related to Task Executions ...................................................................... 244</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotas Related to API Action Throttling .............................................................. 244</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requesting a Quota Increase ................................................................................ 245</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotas for Express Workflows .............................................................................. 245</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotas Related to State Machine Executions ....................................................... 246</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotas Related to Task Executions ...................................................................... 246</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotas Related to API Action Throttling .............................................................. 246</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requesting a Quota Increase ................................................................................ 247</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General Quotas ..................................................................................................... 247</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotas Related to Accounts .................................................................................. 248</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotas Related to API Action Throttling .............................................................. 248</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotas In US East (N. Virginia), US West (Oregon), and Europe (Ireland) .......... 248</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotas In All Other Regions .................................................................................. 249</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restrictions Related to Tagging .......................................................................... 250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requesting a Quota Increase ................................................................................ 250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security ................................................................................................................ 251</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Protection ..................................................................................................... 251</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encryption ............................................................................................................. 252</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identity and Access Management .......................................................................... 252</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Authentication ....................................................................................................... 252</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access Control ...................................................................................................... 253</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How AWS Step Functions Works with IAM ............................................................. 254</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating Granular IAM Permissions for Non-Admin Users ................................... 254</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPC Endpoints ...................................................................................................... 257</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAM Policies for Integrated Services .................................................................... 258</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tag-based Policies ............................................................................................... 283</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logging and Monitoring ....................................................................................... 284</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon CloudWatch Metrics ............................................................................... 284</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon CloudWatch Events ................................................................................... 292</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logging Step Functions Using AWS CloudTrail ................................................. 296</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logging Using CloudWatch Logs ......................................................................... 300</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compliance Validation ......................................................................................... 303</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resilience ............................................................................................................ 303</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infrastructure Security ......................................................................................... 303</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuration and Vulnerability Analysis ............................................................. 304</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Related Information .............................................................................................. 305</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document History ................................................................................................. 306</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS glossary ........................................................................................................ 318</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What Is AWS Step Functions?

AWS Step Functions is a web service that enables you to coordinate the components of distributed applications and microservices using visual workflows. You build applications from individual components that each perform a discrete function, or task, allowing you to scale and change applications quickly.

Step Functions provides a reliable way to coordinate components and step through the functions of your application. Step Functions offers a graphical console to visualize the components of your application as a series of steps. It automatically triggers and tracks each step, and retries when there are errors, so your application executes in order and as expected, every time. Step Functions logs the state of each step, so when things go wrong, you can diagnose and debug problems quickly.

Step Functions manages the operations and underlying infrastructure for you to ensure your application is available at any scale.

You can run your tasks in the AWS Cloud, on your servers, or on any system that has access to AWS. Access and use Step Functions by using the Step Functions console, the AWS SDKs, or an HTTP API.

This guide shows you how to develop, test, and troubleshoot your own state machine using these methods.

Overview of Step Functions

The following are key features of AWS Step Functions:

- Step Functions is based on the concepts of tasks (p. 95) and state machines (p. 90).
- You define state machines using the JSON-based Amazon States Language (p. 92).
- The Step Functions console displays a graphical view of your state machine’s structure. This provides a way to visually check your state machine’s logic and monitor executions.

Express Workflows

Compared to Standard Workflows, Express Workflows:

- Are suitable for high-volume event processing workloads.
- Enable cost-effective processing for short-duration, high-event-rate workloads.
- Can be inspected in Amazon CloudWatch Logs, when logging is enabled for an Express Workflow.

For more information, see the section called “Standard vs. Express Workflows” (p. 89)

Service Integrations

Step Functions integrates with other AWS services. You can call API actions and coordinate executions directly from the Amazon States Language. For more information, see the following topics:

- Service Integration Patterns (p. 146)
Supported Regions

For a list of the AWS Regions where Step Functions is available, see AWS Regions and Endpoints in the AWS General Reference.

About Amazon Web Services

Amazon Web Services (AWS) is a collection of digital infrastructure services that developers can use when developing their applications. The services include computing, storage, database, and application synchronization (messaging and queuing). AWS uses a pay-as-you-go service model: you are charged only for the services that you—or your applications—use. For new AWS users, a free usage tier is available. On this tier, services are free below a certain level of usage. For more information about AWS costs and the Free Tier, see Use the AWS Free Tier. To obtain an AWS account, visit the AWS home page and choose Create a Free Account.
Prerequisites for Setting Up Step Functions

Before you can get started using AWS Step Functions, you must create the following AWS resources.

Create an AWS Account

To access any AWS service, you first need to create an AWS account, an Amazon.com account that can use AWS products. You can use your AWS account to view your activity and usage reports and to manage authentication and access.

To avoid using your AWS account root user for Step Functions actions, it's a best practice to create an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) user for each person who needs administrative access to Step Functions.

To set up a new account

2. Follow the online instructions.
   Part of the sign-up procedure involves receiving a phone call and entering a verification code on the phone keypad.

Create an IAM User

To create an administrator user for yourself and add the user to an administrators group (console)

1. Sign in to the IAM console as the account owner by choosing Root user and entering your AWS account email address. On the next page, enter your password.
   Note
   We strongly recommend that you adhere to the best practice of using the Administrator IAM user below and securely lock away the root user credentials. Sign in as the root user only to perform a few account and service management tasks.
2. In the navigation pane, choose Users and then choose Add user.
3. For User name, enter Administrator.
4. Select the check box next to AWS Management Console access. Then select Custom password, and then enter your new password in the text box.
5. (Optional) By default, AWS requires the new user to create a new password when first signing in. You can clear the check box next to User must create a new password at next sign-in to allow the new user to reset their password after they sign in.
6. Choose **Next: Permissions**.
7. Under **Set permissions**, choose **Add user to group**.
8. Choose **Create group**.
9. In the **Create group** dialog box, for **Group name** enter Administrators.
10. Choose **Filter policies**, and then select **AWS managed -job function** to filter the table contents.
11. In the policy list, select the check box for **AdministratorAccess**. Then choose **Create group**.

   **Note**
   You must activate IAM user and role access to Billing before you can use the AdministratorAccess permissions to access the AWS Billing and Cost Management console. To do this, follow the instructions in step 1 of the tutorial about delegating access to the billing console.

12. Back in the list of groups, select the check box for your new group. Choose **Refresh** if necessary to see the group in the list.
13. Choose **Next: Tags**.
14. (Optional) Add metadata to the user by attaching tags as key-value pairs. For more information about using tags in IAM, see Tagging IAM Entities in the IAM User Guide.
15. Choose **Next: Review** to see the list of group memberships to be added to the new user. When you are ready to proceed, choose **Create user**.

You can use this same process to create more groups and users and to give your users access to your AWS account resources. To learn about using policies that restrict user permissions to specific AWS resources, see Access Management and Example Policies.

### Get Your Access Key ID and Secret Access Key

To use Step Functions actions (for example, by using Java or through the AWS Command Line Interface), you need an access key ID and a secret access key.

**Note**
The access key ID and secret access key are specific to IAM. Don't confuse them with credentials for other AWS services, such as Amazon EC2 key pairs.

Access keys consist of an access key ID and secret access key, which are used to sign programmatic requests that you make to AWS. If you don't have access keys, you can create them from the AWS Management Console. As a best practice, do not use the AWS account root user access keys for any task where it's not required. Instead, create a new administrator IAM user with access keys for yourself.

The only time that you can view or download the secret access key is when you create the keys. You cannot recover them later. However, you can create new access keys at any time. You must also have permissions to perform the required IAM actions. For more information, see Permissions Required to Access IAM Resources in the IAM User Guide.

### To create access keys for an IAM user

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the IAM console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/iam/.
2. In the navigation pane, choose **Users**.
3. Choose the name of the user whose access keys you want to create, and then choose the **Security credentials** tab.
4. In the **Access keys** section, choose **Create access key**.
5. To view the new access key pair, choose **Show**. You will not have access to the secret access key again after this dialog box closes. Your credentials will look something like this:
6. To download the key pair, choose Download .csv file. Store the keys in a secure location. You will not have access to the secret access key again after this dialog box closes.

Keep the keys confidential in order to protect your AWS account and never email them. Do not share them outside your organization, even if an inquiry appears to come from AWS or Amazon.com. No one who legitimately represents Amazon will ever ask you for your secret key.

7. After you download the .csv file, choose Close. When you create an access key, the key pair is active by default, and you can use the pair right away.

Related topics
- What Is IAM? in the IAM User Guide
- AWS Security Credentials in AWS General Reference

Setting Up Step Functions Local (Downloadable Version)

The downloadable version of AWS Step Functions is provided as an executable .jar file, and as a Docker image. The Java application runs on Windows, Linux, macOS, and other platforms that support Java. In addition to Java, you need to install the AWS Command Line Interface (AWS CLI). For information about installing and configuring the AWS CLI, see the AWS Command Line Interface User Guide.

Warning
The downloadable version of AWS Step Functions is intended to be used only for testing and shouldn't be used to process sensitive information.

To set up and run Step Functions on your computer

1. Download Step Functions using the following links.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Download Links</th>
<th>Checksum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.tar.gz</td>
<td>8672b951e4d1e354598898b56f3bf0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.zip</td>
<td>c3c0956a1f9b1bfcab539665602523ba</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Extract the .zip file.
3. Test the download and view version information.

```
# java -jar StepFunctionsLocal.jar -v
Step Function Local
Version: 1.0.0
Build: 2019-01-21
```

4. (Optional) View a listing of available commands.

```
# java -jar StepFunctionsLocal.jar -h
```

5. To start Step Functions on your computer, open a command prompt window, navigate to the directory where you extracted StepFunctionsLocal.jar, and enter the following command.
6. To access Step Functions running locally, use the `--endpoint-url` parameter. For example, using the AWS CLI, you would specify Step Functions commands as follows.

```bash
aws stepfunctions --endpoint-url http://localhost:8083 command
```

**Note**

By default, Step Functions Local uses a fake account and credentials, and the AWS Region is set to US East (N. Virginia). To use Step Functions Local with AWS Lambda, or other supported services, you must configure your credentials and Region.

If you use Express workflows with Step Functions Local, the execution history will be stored in a log file, not logged to CloudWatch Logs. The log file path will be based on the CloudWatch Logs log group ARN provided when you create the local state machine. The log file will be stored in `/aws/states/log-group-name/#${execution_arn}.log` relative to the location where you are running Step Functions Local. For example, if the execution ARN is:

```text
arn:aws:states:us-east-1:123456789012:express:test:example-ExpressLogGroup-wJalrXUtnFEMI
```

the log file will be:

```text
```

To configure and run Step Functions Local to work with AWS Lambda, AWS Serverless Application Model (AWS SAM) CLI Local, or other supported services, see the following topics.

**Topics**

- Step Functions (Downloadable Version) on Your Computer (p. 6)
- Step Functions (Downloadable Version) and Docker (p. 7)
- Step Functions Local Configuration Options (p. 8)
- Step Functions and AWS SAM CLI Local (p. 9)

---

**Step Functions (Downloadable Version) on Your Computer**

Use the local version of SFN to configure, develop and test state machines on your computer.

**Run a HelloWorld State Machine Locally**

After you run Step Functions locally with the AWS Command Line Interface (AWS CLI), you can start a state machine execution.

1. Create a state machine from the AWS CLI by escaping the state machine definition.

```bash
aws stepfunctions --endpoint-url http://localhost:8083 create-state-machine --definition "{
  "Comment": "A Hello World example of the Amazon States Language using a Pass state",
  "StartAt": "HelloWorld",
}
```
"States": {
"HelloWorld": {
"Type": "Pass",
"End": true
}
}}
--name "HelloWorld" --role-arn "arn:aws:iam::012345678901:role/DummyRole"

**Note**
The `role-arn` is not used for Step Functions Local, but you must have include it with the proper syntax. You can use the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) from the previous example.

If you successfully create the state machine, Step Functions responds with the creation date and the state machine ARN.

```
{
  "creationDate": 1548454198.202,
}
```

2. Start an execution using the ARN of the state machine you created.

```
```

---

**Step Functions Local with AWS SAM CLI Local**

You can use the local version of Step Functions with a local version of AWS Lambda. To configure this, you must install and configure AWS SAM.

For information about configuring and running AWS SAM, see the following:

- Set Up AWS SAM
- Start AWS SAM CLI Local

When Lambda is running on your local system, you can start Step Functions Local. From the directory where you extracted your Step Functions local JAR files, start Step Functions Local, configuring the local Lambda endpoint.

```
java -jar StepFunctionsLocal.jar --lambda-endpoint http://127.0.0.1:3001 command
```

For more information about running Step Functions Local with AWS Lambda, see Step Functions and AWS SAM CLI Local (p. 9).

---

**Step Functions (Downloadable Version) and Docker**

The Step Functions Local Docker image enables you to get started with Step Functions Local quickly by using a Docker image with all the needed dependencies. The Docker image enables you to include Step Functions Local in your containerized builds, and as part of your continuous integration testing.

To get the Docker image for Step Functions Local, see https://hub.docker.com/r/amazon/aws-stepfunctions-local, or enter the Docker `pull` command.

```
docker pull amazon/aws-stepfunctions-local
```
To start the downloadable version of Step Functions on Docker, run the following.

```
docker run -p 8083:8083 amazon/aws-stepfunctions-local
```

To interact with AWS Lambda or other supported services you need to configure your credentials and other configuration options first. For more information, see the following:

- Step Functions Local Configuration Options (p. 8)
- Credentials and Configuration for Docker (p. 8)

## Step Functions Local Configuration Options

To use AWS Step Functions Local by starting the JAR file, you can set configuration options by using the AWS Command Line Interface (AWS CLI), or by including them in the system environment. For Docker, you must specify these options in a file that you reference when starting Step Functions Local.

### Configuration Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Command Line</th>
<th>Environment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Account</td>
<td>-account, --aws-account</td>
<td>AWS_ACCOUNT_ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Region</td>
<td>-region, --aws-region</td>
<td>AWS_DEFAULT_REGION</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wait Time Scale</td>
<td>-waitTimeScale, --wait-time-scale</td>
<td>WAIT_TIME_SCALE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lambda Endpoint</td>
<td>-lambdaEndpoint, --lambda-endpoint</td>
<td>LAMBDA_ENDPOINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batch Endpoint</td>
<td>-batchEndpoint, --batch-endpoint</td>
<td>BATCH_ENDPOINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DynamoDB Endpoint</td>
<td>-dynamoDBEndpoint, --dynamodb-endpoint</td>
<td>DYNAMODB_ENDPOINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECS Endpoint</td>
<td>-ecsEndpoint, --ecs-endpoint</td>
<td>ECS_ENDPOINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glue Endpoint</td>
<td>-glueEndpoint, --glue-endpoint</td>
<td>GLUE_ENDPOINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SageMaker Endpoint</td>
<td>-sageMakerEndpoint, --sagemaker-endpoint</td>
<td>SAGE_MAKER_ENDPOINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQS Endpoint</td>
<td>-sqsEndpoint, --sqs-endpoint</td>
<td>SQS_ENDPOINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNS Endpoint</td>
<td>-snsEndpoint, --sns-endpoint</td>
<td>SNS_ENDPOINT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Credentials and Configuration for Docker

To configure Step Functions Local for Docker, create the following file: `aws-stepfunctions-local-credentials.txt`.

This file contains your credentials and other configuration options, such as the following.
Once you have configured your credentials and configuration options in `aws-stepfunctions-local-credentials.txt`, start Step Functions with the following command.

```
docker run -p 8083:8083 --env-file aws-stepfunctions-local-credentials.txt amazon/aws-stepfunctions-local
```

### Step Functions and AWS SAM CLI Local

With both AWS Step Functions and AWS Lambda running on your local machine, you can test your state machine and Lambda functions without deploying your code to AWS.

For more information, see the following:

- Setting Up Step Functions Local (Downloadable Version) (p. 5)
- Set Up AWS SAM

#### Topics

- Step 1: Set Up AWS SAM (p. 9)
- Step 2: Test AWS SAM CLI Local (p. 10)
- Step 3: Start AWS SAM CLI Local (p. 10)
- Step 4: Start Step Functions Local (p. 10)
- Step 5: Create a State Machine That References Your AWS SAM CLI Local Function (p. 11)
- Step 6: Start an Execution of Your Local State Machine (p. 12)

### Step 1: Set Up AWS SAM

AWS Serverless Application Model (AWS SAM) CLI Local requires the AWS Command Line Interface, AWS SAM, and Docker to be installed.

1. **Install the AWS SAM CLI.**

   **Note**
   Before installing the AWS SAM CLI, you need to install the AWS CLI and Docker. See the Prerequisites for installing the AWS SAM CLI.

2. **Go through the AWS SAM Quick Start documentation.** Be sure to follow the steps to do the following:

   1. Initialize the Application
   2. Test the Application Locally
This creates a `sam-app` directory, and builds an environment that includes a Python-based Hello World Lambda function.

**Step 2: Test AWS SAM CLI Local**

Now that you have installed AWS SAM and created the Hello World Lambda function, test it. In the `sam-app` directory, enter the following.

```bash
sam local start-api
```

This launches a local instance of your Lambda function.

```
2019-01-31 16:40:27 You can now browse to the above endpoints to invoke your functions.
2019-01-31 16:40:27 You do not need to restart/reload SAM CLI while working on your functions changes will be reflected instantly/automatically. You only need to restart SAM CLI if you update your AWS SAM template
```

Open a browser and enter the following.

```
http://127.0.0.1:3000/hello
```

This shows output from your function.

```
{"message": "hello world", "location": "72.21.198.66"}
```

Enter **CTRL+C** to end the Lambda API.

**Step 3: Start AWS SAM CLI Local**

Now that you've tested that the function works, start AWS SAM CLI Local. In the `sam-app` directory, enter the following.

```bash
sam local start-lambda
```

This starts AWS SAM CLI Local and provides the endpoint to use.

```
2019-01-29 15:33:32 Starting the Local Lambda Service. You can now invoke your Lambda Functions defined in your template through the endpoint.
```

**Step 4: Start Step Functions Local**

**JAR File**

If you're using the `.jar` file version of Step Functions Local, start Step Functions specifying the Lambda endpoint. In the directory where you extracted the `.jar` files, enter the following.

```
```
When Step Functions Local starts, it checks the environment, and then the credentials configured in your ~/.aws/credentials file. By default, it starts using a fake user ID, and is listed as region us-east-1.

```java -jar StepFunctionsLocal.jar --lambda-endpoint http://localhost:3001
```

Docker

If you’re using the Docker version of Step Functions Local, launch Step Functions with the following command.

```docker run -p 8083:8083 amazon/aws-stepfunctions-local```

For information about installing the Docker version of Step Functions, see Step Functions (Downloadable Version) and Docker (p. 7).

**Note**

You can specify the endpoint through the command line or by setting environment variables if you launch Step Functions from the jar file. For the Docker version, you must specify the endpoints and credentials in a text file. See Step Functions Local Configuration Options (p. 8).

**Step 5: Create a State Machine That References Your AWS SAM CLI Local Function**

Once Step Functions Local is running, create a state machine that references the HelloWorldFunction that you initialized in Step 1: Set Up AWS SAM (p. 9).

```aws stepfunctions --endpoint http://localhost:8083 create-state-machine --definition "{"Comment": "A Hello World example of the Amazon States Language using an AWS Lambda Local function","StartAt": "HelloWorld", "States": {
  "HelloWorld": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "End": true
  }
}" --name "HelloWorld" --role-arn "arn:aws:iam::012345678901:role/DummyRole"
```

This will create a state machine and provide an Amazon Resource Name (ARN) that you can use to start an execution.

```json
{
  "creationDate": 1548805711.403,
}
```
Step 6: Start an Execution of Your Local State Machine

Once you have created a state machine, start an execution referencing the endpoint and state machine ARN.

```
```

This starts an execution of your `HelloWorld` state machine and gives it the name `test`.

```
{
    "startDate": 1548810641.52,
    "executionArn": "arn:aws:states:us-east-1:123456789012:execution:HelloWorld:test"
}
```

Now that Step Functions is running locally, you can interact with it using the AWS CLI. For example, to get information about this execution, use the following.

```
```

Calling `describe-execution` for an execution provides more complete details, as follows.

```
{
    "status": "SUCCEEDED",
    "startDate": 1549056334.073,
    "name": "test",
    "stopDate": 1549056351.276,
    "output": "{"statusCode": 200, \"body\": \"{"message\": \"hello world\", \"location\": \"72.21.198.64\"}\\"",
    "input": "{""
```
Getting Started with Step Functions

This tutorial introduces you to the basics of working with AWS Step Functions.

To get started, you create a simple, independently running state machine using two Pass states. A Pass state represents a no-op (an instruction with no operation).

**Topics**
- Create a State Machine (p. 13)
- Start a New Execution (p. 14)
- Update a State Machine (p. 15)
- Next Steps (p. 16)

Step Functions offers various predefined state machines as templates. Create your first state machine using the **Hello World** template.

Create a State Machine

2. On the Define state machine page, choose Start with a template, and then choose Hello world.
3. Under Type, choose Standard, then review the State machine definition and the visual workflow.

   Note
   You cannot change the state machine type (Standard or Express) once it is created. For more information about the differences between Standard and Express Workflows, see Standard vs. Express Workflows (p. 89).

Step Functions fills in the name of the state machine automatically. It also populates the Code pane with the Amazon States Language description of the state machine.

The following JSON text defines two Pass states. The first is named Hello, and the second is named World. For more information, see State Machine Structure (p. 93).

```json
{
    "Comment": "A Hello World example of the Amazon States Language using Pass states",
    "StartAt": "Hello",
    "States": {
        "Hello": {
            "Type": "Pass",
            "Result": "Hello",
            "Next": "World"
        },
        "World": {
            "Type": "Pass",
            "Result": "World"
        }
    }
}
```
4. Use the graph in the **Visual Workflow** pane to check that your Amazon States Language code describes your state machine correctly.

If you don't see the graph, choose ☰ in the **Visual Workflow** pane.

5. Choose **Next**.

6. Create or enter an IAM role:
   - To create an IAM role for Step Functions, select **Create an IAM role for me**, and enter a **Name** for your role.
   - If you have previously created an IAM role (p. 254) with the correct permissions for your state machine, select **Choose an existing IAM role**. Select a role from the list, or provide an ARN for that role.

   **Note**
   If you delete the IAM role that Step Functions creates, Step Functions can't recreate it later. Similarly, if you modify the role (for example, by removing Step Functions from the principals in the IAM policy), Step Functions can't restore its original settings later.

7. Choose **Create state machine**.

### Start a New Execution

After you create your state machine, you can start an execution.

1. On the **Helloworld** page, choose **Start execution**.
2. (Optional) To help identify your execution, you can specify an ID for it in the **Enter an execution name** box. If you don't enter an ID, Step Functions generates a unique ID automatically.

   **Note**
   Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

3. On the **New execution** page, choose **Start execution**.
A new execution of your state machine starts, and a new page showing your running execution is displayed.

4. (Optional) In the Execution Details section, choose the Info tab to view the Execution Status and the Started and Closed timestamps.

5. To view the results of your execution, choose the Output tab.

Update a State Machine

You can update your state machine for future executions.

**Note**
State machine updates in Step Functions are eventually consistent. After a few seconds, all newly started executions will use the updated definition and roleArn. Executions started immediately after updating a state machine can use the previous state machine definition and roleArn. Executions that were already running will run to completion with the definition and roleArn that they were started with.

1. **On the Helloworld page, choose Edit state machine.**
2. **In the Code pane on the Edit page, edit the Amazon States Language description of the state machine. Update the second Result to read World has been updated!**

   ```json
   {
     "Comment": "A Hello World example of the Amazon States Language using Pass states",
     "StartAt": "Hello",
     "States": {
       "Hello": {
         "Type": "Pass",
         "Result": "Hello",
         "Next": "World"
       },
       "World": {
         "Type": "Pass",
         "Result": "World has been updated!",
         "End": true
       }
     }
   }
   ```

3. (Optional) Select a new AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role from the IAM role for executions list.

   **Note**
   You can also choose Create new role to create an IAM role. For more information, see How AWS Step Functions Works with IAM (p. 254).

4. **Choose Save, and then choose Start execution.**
5. **On the New execution page, choose Start Execution.**
6. To view the results of your execution, select the HelloWorld state in the Visual workflow, and expand the Output section under Step details.

Note
The output text matches your newly updated state machine.

Next Steps

Now that you've created a simple state machine using Pass states, try the following:

- Create a Lambda State Machine (p. 20)
- Create a Lambda State Machine Using AWS CloudFormation (p. 24)
- Create an Activity State Machine (p. 32)
- Handle Error Conditions Using a State Machine (p. 36)
- Start a State Machine Using Amazon CloudWatch Events (p. 41)
- Create a Step Functions API Using Amazon API Gateway (p. 47)
Tutorials for Step Functions

The tutorials in this section can help you understand different aspects of working with AWS Step Functions.

To complete these tutorials, you need an AWS account. If you don't have an AWS account, navigate to http://aws.amazon.com/ and choose Sign In to the Console.

Topics
- Development Options (p. 17)
- Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20)
- Creating a Lambda State Machine for Step Functions Using AWS CloudFormation (p. 24)
- Creating an Activity State Machine Using Step Functions (p. 32)
- Handling Error Conditions Using a Step Functions State Machine (p. 36)
- Periodically Start a State Machine Execution Using CloudWatch Events (p. 41)
- Starting a State Machine Execution in Response to Amazon S3 Events (p. 42)
- Creating a Step Functions API Using API Gateway (p. 47)
- Iterating a Loop Using Lambda (p. 51)
- Continuing as a New Execution (p. 57)
- Using Code Snippets to Create a State to Send an Amazon SNS message (p. 66)
- Deploying an Example Human Approval Project (p. 69)
- Using a Map State to Call Lambda Multiple Times (p. 79)
- Create a Step Functions State Machine Using AWS SAM (p. 83)

Development Options

You can implement your AWS Step Functions state machines in several ways, such as using the console, the SDKs, or a local version for testing and development.

Topics
- Step Functions Console (p. 17)
- AWS SDKs (p. 18)
- Standard and Express Workflows (p. 18)
- HTTPS Service API (p. 18)
- Development Environments (p. 18)
- Endpoints (p. 19)
- AWS CLI (p. 19)
- Step Functions Local (p. 19)
- AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio (p. 19)
- AWS Serverless Application Model and Step Functions (p. 19)

Step Functions Console

You can define a state machine using the Step Functions console. You can write complex state machines in the cloud without using a local development environment by using AWS Lambda to supply code...
for your tasks, and the Step Functions console to define your state machine using the Amazon States Language.

The Creating a Lambda State Machine (p. 20) tutorial uses this technique to create a simple state machine, execute it, and view its results.

AWS SDKs

Step Functions is supported by the AWS SDKs for Java, .NET, Ruby, PHP, Python (Boto 3), JavaScript, Go, and C++. These SDKs provide a convenient way to use the Step Functions HTTPS API actions in various programming languages.

You can develop state machines, activities, or state machine starters using the API actions exposed by these SDK libraries. You can also access visibility operations using these libraries to develop your own Step Functions monitoring and reporting tools.

To use Step Functions with other AWS services, see the reference documentation for the current AWS SDKs and Tools for Amazon Web Services.

Note
Step Functions supports only an HTTPS endpoint.

Standard and Express Workflows

When you create a new state machine, you must select a Type of either Standard or Express. In both cases, you define your state machine using the Amazon States Language. Your state machine executions will behave differently, depending on which Type you select. The Type you choose cannot be changed after your state machine is created.

See Logging Using CloudWatch Logs (p. 300) for more information.

HTTPS Service API

Step Functions provides service operations that are accessible through HTTPS requests. You can use these operations to communicate directly with Step Functions and to develop your own libraries in any language that can communicate with Step Functions through HTTPS.

You can develop state machines, workers, or state machine starters using the service API actions. You can also access visibility operations through the API actions to develop your own monitoring and reporting tools.

For detailed information about API actions, see the AWS Step Functions API Reference.

Development Environments

You must set up a development environment that's appropriate to the programming language that you plan to use.

For example, to develop for Step Functions using Java, you should install a Java development environment (such as the AWS SDK for Java) on each of your development workstations. If you use Eclipse IDE for Java Developers, you should also install the AWS Toolkit for Eclipse. This Eclipse plugin adds features that are useful for developing on AWS.

If your programming language requires a runtime environment, you must set up the environment on each computer where these processes run.
Endpoints

To reduce latency and to store data in a location that meets your requirements, Step Functions provides endpoints in different AWS Regions.

Each endpoint in Step Functions is completely independent. A state machine or activity exists only within the Region where it was created. Any state machines and activities that you create in one Region don't share any data or attributes with those created in another Region. For example, you can register a state machine named `STATES-Flows-1` in two different Regions, but the two state machines won't share data or attributes with each other because they are completely independent from each other.

For a list of Step Functions endpoints, see Regions and Endpoints: AWS Step Functions in the AWS General Reference.

AWS CLI

You can access many Step Functions features from the AWS Command Line Interface (AWS CLI). The AWS CLI provides an alternative to using the Step Functions console or, in some cases, to programming using the Step Functions API actions. For example, you can use the AWS CLI to create a state machine and then list your state machines.

The Step Functions commands in the AWS CLI enable you to start and manage executions, poll for activities, record task heartbeats, and so on. For a complete list of Step Functions commands and the descriptions of the available arguments and examples showing their use, see the AWS CLI Command Reference.

The AWS CLI commands follow the Amazon States Language closely, so you can use the AWS CLI to learn about the Step Functions API actions. You can also use your existing API knowledge to prototype code or perform Step Functions actions from the command line.

Step Functions Local

For testing and development purposes, you can install and run Step Functions on your local machine.

With Step Functions Local, you can start an execution on any machine.

The local version of Step Functions can invoke AWS Lambda functions, both in AWS and running locally. You can also coordinate other supported AWS services (p. 144). For more information, see Setting Up Step Functions Local (Downloadable Version) (p. 5).

AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio

You can use VS Code to interact with remote state machines, and develop state machines locally. You can create or update state machines, list existing state machines, execute them, and download them. VS Code also lets you create new state machines from templates, see a visualization of your state machine, and provides code snippets, code completion, and code validation.

For more information, see the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio Code User Guide

AWS Serverless Application Model and Step Functions

Step Functions is integrated with the AWS Serverless Application Model, which lets you integrate workflows with Lambda functions, APIs and events to create serverless applications.
Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda

In this tutorial, you create an AWS Step Functions state machine that uses an AWS Lambda function to implement a Task state. A Task state performs a single unit of work.

Lambda is well suited for implementing Task states, because Lambda functions are stateless (they have a predictable input-output relationship), easy to write, and don't require deploying code to a server instance. You can write code in the AWS Management Console or your favorite editor. AWS handles the details of providing a computing environment for your function and running it.

Topics
- Step 1: Create an IAM Role for Lambda (p. 20)
- Step 2: Create a Lambda Function (p. 21)
- Step 3: Test the Lambda Function (p. 21)
- Step 4: Create a State Machine (p. 22)
- Step 5: Start a New Execution (p. 23)

Step 1: Create an IAM Role for Lambda

Both AWS Lambda and AWS Step Functions can execute code and access AWS resources (for example, data stored in Amazon S3 buckets). To maintain security, you must grant Lambda and Step Functions access to these resources.

Lambda requires you to assign an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role when you create a Lambda function, in the same way Step Functions requires you to assign an IAM role when you create a state machine.

You use the IAM console to create a service-linked role.

To create a role (console)

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the IAM console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/iam/.
2. In the navigation pane of the IAM console, choose Roles. Then choose Create role.
3. Choose the AWS Service role type, and then choose Lambda.
4. Choose the Lambda use case. Use cases are defined by the service to include the trust policy required by the service. Then choose Next: Permissions.
5. Choose one or more permissions policies to attach to the role (for example, AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole). See AWS Lambda Permissions Model.
   - Select the box next to the policy that assigns the permissions that you want the role to have, and then choose Next: Review.
6. Enter a Role name.
7. (Optional) For Role description, edit the description for the new service-linked role.
8. Review the role, and then choose Create role.
Step 2: Create a Lambda Function

Your Lambda function receives input (a name) and returns a greeting that includes the input value.

**Important**

Ensure that your Lambda function is under the same AWS account and AWS Region as your state machine.

1. Open the Lambda console and choose Create a function.
2. In the Create function section, choose Author from scratch.
3. In the Basic information section, configure your Lambda function:
   a. For Function name, enter HelloFunction.
   b. For Runtime, choose Node.js 12.x.
   c. For Role, select Choose an existing role.
   d. For Existing role, select the Lambda role that you created earlier (p. 20).
      
      **Note**
      If the IAM role that you created doesn't appear in the list, the role might still need a few minutes to propagate to Lambda.
   e. Choose Create function.

When your Lambda function is created, make a note of its Amazon Resource Name (ARN) in the upper-right corner of the page, as shown in the example.

```
arwn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:123456789012:function:HelloFunction
```

4. Copy the following code for the Lambda function into the Function code section of the HelloFunction page.

```javascript
exports.handler = (event, context, callback) => {
  callback(null, "Hello, " + event.who + ")");
};
```

This code assembles a greeting using the who field of the input data, which is provided by the event object passed into your function. You add input data for this function later, when you start a new execution (p. 23). The callback method returns the assembled greeting from your function.

5. Choose Save.

---

Step 3: Test the Lambda Function

Test your Lambda function to see it in operation.

1. For Select a test event, choose Configure test event. For Event name, enter HelloFunction.
2. Replace the example data with the following.

```json
{
  "who": "AWS Step Functions"
}
```

The "who" entry corresponds to the event.who field in your Lambda function, completing the greeting. You will use the same input data when running the function as a Step Functions task.

3. Choose Create.
4. On the HelloFunction page, Test your Lambda function using the new data.
Step 4: Create a State Machine

Use the Step Functions console to create a state machine with a Task state. Add a reference to your Lambda function in the Task state. The Lambda function is invoked when an execution of the state machine reaches the Task state.

1. Open the Step Functions console and choose Create a state machine.
2. On the Define state machine page, choose Author with code snippets. For Type, choose Standard. Enter a Name for your state machine, for example, LambdaStateMachine.

   Note
   State machine, execution, and activity names must be 1–80 characters in length, must be unique for your account and AWS Region, and must not contain any of the following:
   - Whitespace
   - Wildcard characters (?, *)
   - Bracket characters (< > { } [])
   - Special characters (\; ; , | ^ ~ $ # % & ` ")
   - Control characters (\u0000 - \u001f or \u007f - \u009f).

   Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

3. In the State machine definition pane, add the following state machine definition using the ARN of the Lambda function that you created earlier (p. 21), as shown in the following example.

   ```json
   {
     "Comment": "A Hello World example of the Amazon States Language using an AWS Lambda function",
     "StartAt": "HelloWorld",
     "States": {
       "HelloWorld": {
         "Type": "Task",
         "End": true
       }
     }
   }
   ``

   This is a description of your state machine using the Amazon States Language. It defines a single Task state named HelloWorld. For more information, see State Machine Structure (p. 93).

   Note
   You can also set up a Retry for Task states. As a best practice, ensure production code can handle Lambda service exceptions (Lambda.ServiceException and Lambda.SdkClientException). For more information, see the following:
   - Handle Lambda Service Exceptions (p. 241)
   - Retrying after an Error (p. 138)

   Choose Next.
4. Create or enter an IAM role:

- To create an IAM role for Step Functions, select **Create an IAM role for me**, and enter a **Name** for your role.
- If you have previously created an IAM role (p. 254) with the correct permissions for your state machine, select **Choose an existing IAM role**. Select a role from the list, or provide an ARN for that role.

**Note**
If you delete the IAM role that Step Functions creates, Step Functions can’t recreate it later. Similarly, if you modify the role (for example, by removing Step Functions from the principals in the IAM policy), Step Functions can’t restore its original settings later.

5. Choose **Next**.

**Step 5: Start a New Execution**

After you create your state machine, you start an execution.

1. On the **LambdaStateMachine** page, choose **Start execution**.

The **New execution** page is displayed.

2. (Optional) To help identify your execution, you can specify an ID for it in the **Enter an execution name** box. If you don’t enter an ID, Step Functions generates a unique ID automatically.

**Note**
Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don’t work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

3. In the execution input area, replace the example data with the following.

```json
{
  "who" : "AWS Step Functions"
}
```

"who" is the key name that your Lambda function uses to get the name of the person to greet.

4. Choose **Start Execution**.

A new execution of your state machine starts, and a new page showing your running execution is displayed.

5. To view the results of your execution, expand the **Output** section under **Execution details**.
Creating a Lambda State Machine for Step Functions Using AWS CloudFormation

This tutorial shows you how to create a basic AWS Lambda function using AWS CloudFormation. You use the AWS CloudFormation console and a YAML template to create the stack (IAM roles, the Lambda function, and the state machine). Then you use the AWS Step Functions console to start the state machine execution.

For more information, see Working with CloudFormation Templates and the AWS::StepFunctions::StateMachine resource in the AWS CloudFormation User Guide.

Topics

- Step 1: Set Up Your AWS CloudFormation Template (p. 24)
- Step 2: Use the AWS CloudFormation Template to Create a Lambda State Machine (p. 28)
- Step 3: Start a State Machine Execution (p. 31)

Step 1: Set Up Your AWS CloudFormation Template

Before you use the example templates (p. 28), you should understand how to declare the different parts of an AWS CloudFormation template.

Topics

- To create an IAM role for Lambda (p. 24)
- To create a Lambda function (p. 25)
- To create an IAM role for the state machine execution (p. 25)
- To create a Lambda state machine (p. 27)

To create an IAM role for Lambda

Define the trust policy associated with the IAM role for the Lambda function.

YAML

```
LambdaExecutionRole:
  Type: "AWS::IAM::Role"
  Properties:
    AssumeRolePolicyDocument:
      Version: "2012-10-17"
      Statement:
        - Effect: Allow
          Principal:
            Service: lambda.amazonaws.com
          Action: "sts:AssumeRole"
```

JSON

```
"LambdaExecutionRole": {
  "Type": "AWS::IAM::Role",
  "Properties": {
    "AssumeRolePolicyDocument": {
      "Version": "2012-10-17",
      "Statement": {
        "Effect": "Allow",
        "Principal": {
          "Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com"
        },
        "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
      }
    }
  }
}
```
To create a Lambda function

Define the following properties of the Lambda function that prints the message Hello World.

**Important**
Ensure that your Lambda function is under the same AWS account and AWS Region as your state machine.

**YAML**

MyLambdaFunction:
  Type: "AWS::Lambda::Function"
  Properties:
    Handler: "index.handler"
    Role: !GetAtt [ LambdaExecutionRole, Arn ]
    Code:
      ZipFile: |
      exports.handler = (event, context, callback) => {
        callback(null, "Hello World!");
      };
    Runtime: "nodejs12.x"
    Timeout: "25"

**JSON**

"MyLambdaFunction": {
  "Type": "AWS::Lambda::Function",
  "Properties": {
    "Handler": "index.handler",
    "Role": {
      "Fn::GetAtt": [ "LambdaExecutionRole", "Arn" ]
    },
    "Code": {
      "ZipFile": "exports.handler = (event, context, callback) => {
        callback(null, "Hello World!");
      };
    },
    "Runtime": "nodejs12.x",
    "Timeout": "25"
  }
}

To create an IAM role for the state machine execution

Define the trust policy associated with the IAM role for the state machine execution.
### YAML

```yaml
StatesExecutionRole:
  Type: "AWS::IAM::Role"
  Properties:
    AssumeRolePolicyDocument:
      Version: "2012-10-17"
      Statement:
        - Effect: "Allow"
          Principal:
            Service:
              - !Sub states.${AWS::Region}.amazonaws.com
          Action: "sts:AssumeRole"
        - Path: "/
          Policies:
            - PolicyName: StatesExecutionPolicy
              PolicyDocument:
                Version: "2012-10-17"
                Statement:
                  - Effect: Allow
                    Action:
                      - "lambda:InvokeFunction"
                    Resource: "*"
```

### JSON

```json
"StatesExecutionRole": {
  "Type": "AWS::IAM::Role",
  "Properties": {
    "AssumeRolePolicyDocument": {
      "Version": "2012-10-17",
      "Statement": [
        { "Effect": "Allow",
          "Principal": {
            "Service": [
              { "Fn::Sub": "states.${AWS::Region}.amazonaws.com" }
            ]
          },
          "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
        }
      ],
      "Path": "/",
      "Policies": [
        { "PolicyName": "StatesExecutionPolicy",
          "PolicyDocument": {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
              { "Effect": "Allow",
                "Action": [ "lambda:InvokeFunction" ],
                "Resource": "*"
              }
            ]
          }
        }
      ]
    }
  }
}
```
To create a Lambda state machine

Define the Lambda state machine.

**YAML**

```yaml
MyStateMachine:
  Type: "AWS::StepFunctions::StateMachine"
  Properties:
    DefinitionString:
      !Sub
        - |
          |
            "Comment": "A Hello World example using an AWS Lambda function",
            "StartAt": "HelloWorld",
            "States": {
              "HelloWorld": {
                "Type": "Task",
                "Resource": "${lambdaArn}",
                "End": true
              }
            }
        - {lambdaArn: !GetAtt [ MyLambdaFunction, Arn ]}
    RoleArn: !GetAtt [ StatesExecutionRole, Arn ]
```

**JSON**

```json
"MyStateMachine": {
  "Type": "AWS::StepFunctions::StateMachine",
  "Properties": {
    "DefinitionString": {
      "Fn::Sub": [
        "{\n          "Comment": "A Hello World example using an AWS Lambda function\",\n          "StartAt": "HelloWorld\",\n          "States": {\n            "HelloWorld": {\n              "Type": "Task\",\n              "Resource": "${lambdaArn}\",\n              "End": true
            }
          }
        },
        "lambdaArn": {
          "Fn::GetAtt": ["MyLambdaFunction", "Arn"
        },
        "RoleArn": {
          "Fn::GetAtt": ["StatesExecutionRole", "Arn"
        }
      ]
    }
  }
}
```
Step 2: Use the AWS CloudFormation Template to Create a Lambda State Machine

After you understand the parts of the AWS CloudFormation template, you put them together and use the template to create an AWS CloudFormation stack.

To create the Lambda state machine

1. Copy the following example data to a file named MyStateMachine.yaml for the YAML example, or MyStateMachine.json for JSON.

YAML

```yaml
AWSTemplateFormatVersion: "2010-09-09"
Description: "An example template with an IAM role for a Lambda state machine."
Resources:
  LambdaExecutionRole:
    Type: "AWS::IAM::Role"
    Properties:
      AssumeRolePolicyDocument:
        Version: "2012-10-17"
        Statement:
          - Effect: Allow
            Principal:
              Service: lambda.amazonaws.com
            Action: "sts:AssumeRole"
  MyLambdaFunction:
    Type: "AWS::Lambda::Function"
    Properties:
      Handler: "index.handler"
      Role: !GetAtt [ LambdaExecutionRole, Arn ]
      Code:
        ZipFile: |
          exports.handler = (event, context, callback) => {
            callback(null, "Hello World!");
          };
      Runtime: "nodejs12.x"
      Timeout: "25"
  StatesExecutionRole:
    Type: "AWS::IAM::Role"
    Properties:
      AssumeRolePolicyDocument:
        Version: "2012-10-17"
        Statement:
          - Effect: "Allow"
            Principal:
              Service:
                - !Sub states.${AWS::Region}.amazonaws.com
            Action: "sts:AssumeRole"
        Path: "/
      Policies:
        - PolicyName: StatesExecutionPolicy
          PolicyDocument:
            Version: "2012-10-17"
            Statement:
              - Effect: Allow
                Action:
                  - "lambda:InvokeFunction"
                Resource: "*"
```

28
MyStateMachine:
Type: "AWS::StepFunctions::StateMachine"
Properties:
  DefinitionString:
    !Sub
      - |-
        { "Comment": "A Hello World example using an AWS Lambda function",
          "StartAt": "HelloWorld",
          "States": {
            "HelloWorld": {
              "Type": "Task",
              "Resource": "#{lambdaArn}",
              "End": true
            }
          }
        }
        - {lambdaArn: !GetAtt [ MyLambdaFunction, Arn ]}
      RoleArn: !GetAtt [ StatesExecutionRole, Arn ]

JSON

```json
{
  "AWSTemplateFormatVersion": "2010-09-09",
  "Description": "An example template with an IAM role for a Lambda state
  machine.",
  "Resources": {
    "LambdaExecutionRole": {
      "Type": "AWS::IAM::Role",
      "Properties": {
        "AssumeRolePolicyDocument": {
          "Version": "2012-10-17",
          "Statement": [
            {
              "Effect": "Allow",
              "Principal": {
                "Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com"
              },
              "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
            }
          ]
        }
      }
    }
  },
  "MyLambdaFunction": {
    "Type": "AWS::Lambda::Function",
    "Properties": {
      "Handler": "index.handler",
      "Role": {
        "Fn::GetAtt": [
          "LambdaExecutionRole",
          "Arn"
        ]
      },
      "Code": {
        "ZipFile": "exports.handler = (event, context, callback) => {
          callback(null, \"Hello World!\")\n        }",
        "Runtime": "nodejs12.x",
        "Timeout": "25"
      }
    }
  },
  "StatesExecutionRole": {
```
"Type": "AWS::IAM::Role",
"Properties": {
  "AssumeRolePolicyDocument": {
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
      {
        "Effect": "Allow",
        "Principal": {
          "Service": [
            "states.${AWS::Region}.amazonaws.com"
          ]
        },
        "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
      }
    ],
    "Path": "/",
    "Policies": [
      {
        "PolicyName": "StatesExecutionPolicy",
        "PolicyDocument": {
          "Version": "2012-10-17",
          "Statement": [
            {
              "Effect": "Allow",
              "Action": ["lambda:InvokeFunction"],
              "Resource": "*"
            }
          ]
        }
      }
    ]
  },
  "MyStateMachine": {
    "Type": "AWS::StepFunctions::StateMachine",
    "Properties": {
      "DefinitionString": {
        "Fn::Sub": [
          "{\n            "Comment": "A Hello World example using an AWS Lambda function",
            "StartAt": "HelloWorld",
            "States": {\n              "HelloWorld": {\n                "Type": "Task",
                "Resource": "${lambdaArn}\",
                "End": true\n              }\n            }\n          }"
        ,
        "lambdaArn": {
          "Fn::GetAtt": [
            "MyLambdaFunction",
            "Arn"
          ]
        }
      }
    },
    "RoleArn": {
      "Fn::GetAtt": [
        "StatesExecutionRole",
        "Arn"
      ]
    }
  }
}
2. Open the AWS CloudFormation console and choose Create Stack.

3. On the Select Template page, choose Upload a template to Amazon S3. Choose your MyStateMachine file, and then choose Next.

4. On the Specify Details page, for Stack name, enter MyStateMachine, and then choose Next.

5. On the Options page, choose Next.

6. On the Review page, choose I acknowledge that AWS CloudFormation might create IAM resources. and then choose Create.

AWS CloudFormation begins to create the MyStateMachine stack and displays the CREATE_IN_PROGRESS status. When the process is complete, AWS CloudFormation displays the CREATE_COMPLETE status.

7. (Optional) To display the resources in your stack, select the stack and choose the Resources tab.

---

**Step 3: Start a State Machine Execution**

After you create your Lambda state machine, you start an execution.

**To start the state machine execution**

1. Open the Step Functions console and choose the name of the state machine that you created using AWS CloudFormation.

2. On the MyStateMachine-ABCDEFGHIJ1K page, choose New execution.

   The New execution page is displayed.

3. (Optional) To help identify your execution, you can specify an ID for it in the Enter an execution name box. If you don't enter an ID, Step Functions generates a unique ID automatically.

   **Note**
   
   Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.


   A new execution of your state machine starts, and a new page showing your running execution is displayed.

5. (Optional) In the Execution Details, review the Execution Status and the Started and Closed timestamps.

6. To view the results of your execution, choose Output.
Creating an Activity State Machine Using Step Functions

This tutorial shows you how to create an activity-based state machine using Java and AWS Step Functions. Activities allow you to control worker code that runs somewhere else in your state machine. For an overview, see Activities (p. 99) in How Step Functions Works (p. 89).

To complete this tutorial, you need the following:

- The SDK for Java. The example activity in this tutorial is a Java application that uses the AWS SDK for Java to communicate with AWS.
- AWS credentials in the environment or in the standard AWS configuration file. For more information, see Set Up Your AWS Credentials in the AWS SDK for Java Developer Guide.

Topics

- Step 1: Create an Activity (p. 32)
- Step 2: Create a State Machine (p. 32)
- Step 3: Implement a Worker (p. 34)
- Step 4: Start an Execution (p. 35)
- Step 5: Run and Stop the Worker (p. 36)

Step 1: Create an Activity

You must make Step Functions aware of the activity whose worker (a program) you want to create. Step Functions responds with an Amazon Resource Name (ARN) that establishes an identity for the activity. Use this identity to coordinate the information passed between your state machine and worker.

Important

Ensure that your activity task is under the same AWS account as your state machine.

1. In the Step Functions console, in the navigation pane on the left, choose Activities.
2. Choose Create activity.
3. Enter an Activity Name, for example, get-greeting, and then choose Create Activity.
4. When your activity task is created, make a note of its ARN, as shown in the following example.


Step 2: Create a State Machine

Create a state machine that determines when your activity is invoked and when your worker should perform its primary work, collect its results, and return them.

1. In the Step Functions console, in the navigation pane on the left, choose State machines.
2. On the State machines page, choose Create state machine, and then choose Author with code snippets. For Type, choose Standard, and then enter a name for your state machine (for example, ActivityStateMachine).

Note

State machine, execution, and activity names must be 1–80 characters in length, must be unique for your account and AWS Region, and must not contain any of the following:
Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

Under **State machine definition**, enter the following code, and include the ARN of the activity task that you created earlier (p. 32) in the Resource field, as shown in the following example.

```json
{
"Comment": "An example using a Task state. ",
"StartAt": "getGreeting",
"Version": "1.0",
"TimeoutSeconds": 300,
"States":
{
"getGreeting": {
"Type": "Task",
"End": true
}
}
}
```

This is a description of your state machine using the Amazon States Language. It defines a single Task state named `getGreeting`. For more information, see [StateMachine Structure](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/stepfunctions/latest/dg/sm-structure.html) (p. 93).

3. Use the graph in the **Visual Workflow** pane to check that your Amazon States Language code describes your state machine correctly.

   ![Visual Workflow Diagram]

   If you don't see the graph, choose ⚙ in the **Visual Workflow** pane.

4. Choose **Next**.

5. Create or enter an IAM role:

   - To create an IAM role for Step Functions, select **Create an IAM role for me**, and enter a **Name** for your role.

   - If you have previously created an IAM role (p. 254) with the correct permissions for your state machine, select **Choose an existing IAM role**. Select a role from the list, or provide an ARN for that role.
Note
If you delete the IAM role that Step Functions creates, Step Functions can't recreate it later. Similarly, if you modify the role (for example, by removing Step Functions from the principals in the IAM policy), Step Functions can't restore its original settings later.

6. Choose **Create state machine**.

### Step 3: Implement a Worker

Create a **worker**. A worker is a program that is responsible for:

- Polling Step Functions for activities using the `GetActivityTask` API action.
- Performing the work of the activity using your code, (for example, the `getGreeting()` method in the following code).
- Returning the results using the `SendTaskSuccess`, `SendTaskFailure`, and `SendTaskHeartbeat` API actions.

**Note**
For a more complete example of an activity worker, see Example Activity Worker in Ruby (p. 100). This example provides an implementation based on best practices, which you can use as a reference for your activity worker. The code implements a consumer-producer pattern with a configurable number of threads for pollers and activity workers.

**To implement the worker**

1. **Create a file named** `GreeterActivities.java`.
2. **Add the following code to it.**

```java
import com.amazonaws.ClientConfiguration;
import com.amazonaws.auth.EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider;
import com.amazonaws.regions.Regions;
import com.amazonaws.services.stepfunctions.AWSStepFunctions;
import com.amazonaws.services.stepfunctions.AWSStepFunctionsClientBuilder;
import com.amazonaws.services.stepfunctions.model.GetActivityTaskRequest;
import com.amazonaws.services.stepfunctions.model.GetActivityTaskResult;
import com.amazonaws.services.stepfunctions.model.SendTaskFailureRequest;
import com.amazonaws.services.stepfunctions.model.SendTaskSuccessRequest;
import com.amazonaws.util.json.Jackson;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode;
import java.util.concurrent.TimeUnit;

public class GreeterActivities {
    public String getGreeting(String who) throws Exception {
        return "\"Hello\": \" + who + "\";";
    }

    public static void main(final String[] args) throws Exception {
        GreeterActivities greeterActivities = new GreeterActivities();
        ClientConfiguration clientConfiguration = new ClientConfiguration();
        clientConfiguration.setSocketTimeout((int)TimeUnit.SECONDS.toMillis(70));

        AWSStepFunctions client = AWSStepFunctionsClientBuilder.standard()
            .withRegion(Regions.US_EAST_1)
            .withCredentials(new EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider());
```
.withClientConfiguration(clientConfiguration)
  .build();

while (true) {
  GetActivityTaskResult getActivityTaskResult =
    client.getActivityTask(
      new
    GetActivityTaskRequest().withActivityArn(ACTIVITY_ARN));

  if (getActivityTaskResult.getTaskToken() != null) {
    try {
      JsonNode json =
        Jackson.jsonNodeOf(getActivityTaskResult.getInput());
      String greetingResult =
        greeterActivities.getGreeting(json.get("who").textValue());
      client.sendTaskSuccess(
        new SendTaskSuccessRequest().withOutput(
          greetingResult).withTaskToken(getActivityTaskResult.getTaskToken()));
    } catch (Exception e) {
      client.sendTaskFailure(new SendTaskFailureRequest().withTaskToken(
        getActivityTaskResult.getTaskToken()));
    }
  } else {
    Thread.sleep(1000);
  }
}

**Note**
The EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider class in this example assumes that the AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID (or AWS_ACCESS_KEY) and AWS_SECRET_KEY (or AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY) environment variables are set. For more information about providing the required credentials to the factory, see AWSCredentialsProvider in the AWS SDK for Java API Reference and Set Up AWS Credentials and Region for Development in the AWS SDK for Java Developer Guide.

By default the AWS SDK will wait up to 50 seconds to receive data from the server for any operation. The GetActivityTask operation is a long-poll operation that will wait up to 60 seconds for the next available task. To prevent receiving a SocketTimeoutException error, set SocketTimeout to 70 seconds.

3. In the parameter list of the GetActivityTaskRequest().withActivityArn() constructor, replace the ACTIVITY_ARN value with the ARN of the activity task that you created earlier (p. 32).

### Step 4: Start an Execution

When you start the execution of the state machine, your worker polls Step Functions for activities, performs its work (using the input that you provide), and returns its results.

1. On the **ActivityStateMachine** page, choose **Start execution**.

   The **New execution** page is displayed.

2. (Optional) To help identify your execution, you can specify an ID for it in the **Enter an execution name** box. If you don't enter an ID, Step Functions generates a unique ID automatically.

   **Note**
   Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch.
To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

3. In the execution input area, replace the example data with the following.

```json
{
    "who" : "AWS Step Functions"
}
```

4. Choose **Start Execution**.

A new execution of your state machine starts, and a new page showing your running execution is displayed.

5. In the **Execution Details** section, choose **Info** to view the **Execution Status** and the **Started** and **Closed** timestamps.

6. In the **Execution Details** section, expand the **Output** section to view the output of your workflow.

**Step 5: Run and Stop the Worker**

To have the worker poll your state machine for activities, you must run the worker.

1. On the command line, navigate to the directory in which you created `GreeterActivities.java`.

2. To use the AWS SDK, add the full path of the lib and third-party directories to the dependencies of your build file and to your Java CLASSPATH. For more information, see **Downloading and Extracting the SDK** in the **AWS SDK for Java Developer Guide**.

3. Compile the file.

```
$ javac GreeterActivities.java
```

4. Run the file.

```
$ java GreeterActivities
```

5. In the **Step Functions console**, navigate to the **Execution Details** page.

6. When the execution completes, choose **Output** to see the results of your execution.

7. Stop the worker.

**Handling Error Conditions Using a Step Functions State Machine**

In this tutorial, you create an AWS Step Functions state machine with a **Catch** field. The **Catch** uses an AWS Lambda function to respond with conditional logic based on error message type. This is a technique called **function error handling**.

For more information, see **Function Error Handling** in the **AWS Lambda Developer Guide**.

**Note**

You can also create state machines that **Retry** on timeouts or those that use **Catch** to transition to a specific state when an error or timeout occurs. For examples of these error handling techniques, see **Examples Using Retry and Using Catch** (p. 141).

**Topics**

- **Step 1: Create an IAM Role for Lambda** (p. 37)
Step 1: Create an IAM Role for Lambda

Both AWS Lambda and AWS Step Functions can execute code and access AWS resources (for example, data stored in Amazon S3 buckets). To maintain security, you must grant Lambda and Step Functions access to these resources.

Lambda requires you to assign an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role when you create a Lambda function, in the same way Step Functions requires you to assign an IAM role when you create a state machine.

1. Sign in to the IAM console and choose Roles, Create role.
2. On the Select type of trusted entity page, under AWS service, select Lambda from the list, and then choose Next: Permissions.
   
   Note
   The role is automatically provided with a trust relationship that allows Lambda to use the role.

3. On the Attach permissions policy page, choose Next: Review.
4. On the Review page, enter MyLambdaRole for Role Name, and then choose Create role.

The IAM role appears in the list of roles.

Step 2: Create a Lambda Function That Fails

Use a Lambda function to simulate an error condition.

Important
Ensure that your Lambda function is under the same AWS account and AWS Region as your state machine.

1. Open the AWS Lambda console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/lambda/.

   Choose Create a function.

2. In the Blueprints section, enter step-functions into the filter, and then choose the step-functions-error blueprint.

3. In the Basic information section, configure your Lambda function:
   
   a. For Name, enter FailFunction.
   b. For Role, select Choose an existing role.
   c. For Existing role, choose the Lambda role that you created earlier (p. 37).

   Note
   If the IAM role that you created doesn't appear in the list, the role might still need a few minutes to propagate to Lambda.

4. The following code is displayed in the Lambda function code pane.

   'use strict';
exports.handler = (event, context, callback) => {
  function CustomError(message) {
    this.name = 'CustomError';
    this.message = message;
  }
  CustomError.prototype = new Error();
  const error = new CustomError('This is a custom error!');
  callback(error);
};

The context object returns the error message This is a custom error!.

5. Choose Create function.

When your Lambda function is created, make a note of its Amazon Resource Name (ARN) in the upper-right corner of the page, as shown in the following example.

arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:123456789012:function:FailFunction

**Step 3: Test the Lambda Function**

Test your Lambda function to see it in operation.

1. On the FailFunction page, choose Test.
2. In the Configure test event dialog box, enter FailFunction for Event name, and then choose Create.
3. On the FailFunction page, Test your Lambda function.

   The results of the test (the simulated error) are displayed at the bottom of the page.

**Step 4: Create a State Machine with a Catch Field**

Use the Step Functions console to create a state machine that uses a Task state with a Catch field. Add a reference to your Lambda function in the Task state. The Lambda function is invoked and fails during execution. Step Functions retries the function twice using exponential backoff between retries.

1. Open the Step Functions console and choose Create state machine.
2. On the Create a state machine page, choose Templates, and then choose Catch failure.

   ![Catch failure](image)

   An example of a Task state using Catchers to handle Lambda failures.

3. Under Type, choose Standard. Enter a Name for your state machine, for example, Catchfailure.

   **Note**

   State machine, execution, and activity names must be 1–80 characters in length, must be unique for your account and AWS Region, and must not contain any of the following:

   - Whitespace
   - Wildcard characters (\? \*)
   - Bracket characters (< > { } [ ])
   - Special characters (: ; , \ | ^ ~ $ # % & ` " )
   - Control characters (\u0000 - \u001f or \u007f - \u009f).
Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

4. In the Code pane, add the ARN of the Lambda function that you created earlier (p. 37) to the Resource field, as shown in the following example.

```json
{
    "Comment": "A Catch example of the Amazon States Language using an AWS Lambda function",
    "StartAt": "CreateAccount",
    "States": {
        "CreateAccount": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "Catch": [
                {
                    "ErrorEquals": ["CustomError"],
                    "Next": "CustomErrorFallback"
                },
                {
                    "ErrorEquals": ["States.TaskFailed"],
                    "Next": "ReservedTypeFallback"
                },
                {
                    "ErrorEquals": ["States.ALL"],
                    "Next": "CatchAllFallback"
                }
            ],
            "End": true
        },
        "CustomErrorFallback": {
            "Type": "Pass",
            "Result": "This is a fallback from a custom Lambda function exception",
            "End": true
        },
        "ReservedTypeFallback": {
            "Type": "Pass",
            "Result": "This is a fallback from a reserved error code",
            "End": true
        },
        "CatchAllFallback": {
            "Type": "Pass",
            "Result": "This is a fallback from any error code",
            "End": true
        }
    }
}
```

This is a description of your state machine using the Amazon States Language. It defines a single Task state named CreateAccount. For more information, see State Machine Structure (p. 93).

For more information about the syntax of the Retry field, see Examples Using Retry and Using Catch (p. 141).

**Note**

Unhandled errors in Lambda are reported as Lambda.Unknown in the error output. These include out-of-memory errors and function timeouts. You can match on Lambda.Unknown, States.ALL, or States.TaskFailed to handle these errors. When Lambda hits the maximum number of invocations, the error is Lambda.TooManyRequestsException. For more information about Lambda Handled and Unhandled errors, see FunctionError in the AWS Lambda Developer Guide.
5. Use the graph in the **Visual Workflow** pane to check that your Amazon States Language code describes your state machine correctly.

![Diagram of state machine](image.png)

If you don’t see the graph, choose ✡ in the **Visual Workflow** pane.

6. Choose **Next**.

7. Create or enter an IAM role:
   
   - To create an IAM role for Step Functions, select **Create an IAM role for me**, and enter a **Name** for your role.
   
   - If you have previously created an IAM role (p. 254) with the correct permissions for your state machine, select **Choose an existing IAM role**. Select a role from the list, or provide an ARN for that role.

   **Note**

   If you delete the IAM role that Step Functions creates, Step Functions can’t recreate it later. Similarly, if you modify the role (for example, by removing Step Functions from the principals in the IAM policy), Step Functions can’t restore its original settings later.

8. Choose **Create state machine**.

---

**Step 5: Start a New Execution**

After you create your state machine, you can start an execution.

1. On the **CatchStateMachine** page, choose **New execution**.

   The **New execution** page is displayed.

2. (Optional) To help identify your execution, you can specify an ID for it in the **Enter an execution name** box. If you don’t enter an ID, Step Functions generates a unique ID automatically.

   **Note**

   Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don’t work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

3. Choose **Start Execution**.

   A new execution of your state machine starts, and a new page showing your running execution is displayed.

4. In the **Execution Details** section, expand the **Output** section to view the output of your workflow.
5. To view your custom error message, select CreateAccount in the **Visual workflow** and expand the **Output** section.

![Visual workflow diagram]

**Note**

You can preserve the state input with the error by using ResultPath. See Use ResultPath to Include Both Error and Input in a Catch (p. 130).

---

**Perioidically Start a State Machine Execution Using CloudWatch Events**

You can execute an AWS Step Functions state machine in response to an event pattern or on a schedule using Amazon CloudWatch Events. This tutorial shows you how to set a state machine as a target for a CloudWatch Events rule that starts the execution of a state machine every five minutes.

For more information about setting a Step Functions state machine as a target using the **PutTarget** Amazon CloudWatch Events API action, see Add a Step Functions state machine as a target.

**Topics**

- Step 1: Create a State Machine (p. 41)
- Step 2: Create a CloudWatch Events Rule (p. 42)

---

**Step 1: Create a State Machine**

Before you can set a CloudWatch Events target, you must create a state machine.

- To create a basic state machine, use the **Getting Started** (p. 13) tutorial.
- If you already have a state machine, proceed to the next step.
Step 2: Create a CloudWatch Events Rule

After you create your state machine, you can create your CloudWatch Events rule.

1. Navigate to the CloudWatch Events console, choose Events, and then choose Create Rule.

The Step 1: Create rule page is displayed.

2. In the Event source section, choose Schedule, and then enter 5 for Fixed rate of.

3. In the Targets section, choose Add target, and then from the list choose Step Functions state machine.

4. CloudWatch Events can create the IAM role needed for your event to run:
   - To create an IAM role automatically, choose Create a new role for this specific resource.
   - To use an IAM role that you created previously, choose Use existing role.

5. Choose Configure details.

The Step 2: Configure rule details page is displayed.

6. Enter a Name for your rule (for example, statemachine-event), choose Enabled for State, and then choose Create rule.

A new execution of your state machine starts every five minutes.

Starting a State Machine Execution in Response to Amazon S3 Events

You can use Amazon CloudWatch Events to execute an AWS Step Functions state machine in response to an event or on a schedule.

This tutorial shows you how to configure a state machine as a target for a CloudWatch Events rule. This will start an execution when files are added to an Amazon S3 bucket.

For a practical application, you could launch a state machine that performs operations on files that you add to the bucket, such as creating thumbnails or running Amazon Rekognition analysis on image and video files.

For this tutorial you start an execution of a simple Hello World state machine by adding a file to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. Then you review example input of that execution to show what information is included in the input from AWS CloudTrail.

Topics

- Prerequisite: Create a State Machine (p. 42)
- Step 1: Create a Bucket in Amazon S3 (p. 43)
- Step 2: Create a Trail in AWS CloudTrail (p. 43)
- Step 3: Create a CloudWatch Events Rule (p. 43)
- Step 4: Test the CloudWatch Rule (p. 45)
- Example of Execution Input (p. 45)

Prerequisite: Create a State Machine

Before you can configure a CloudWatch Events target, you must create a state machine.
To create a basic state machine, use the Getting Started (p. 13) tutorial.
If you already have a HelloWorld state machine, proceed to the next step.

Step 1: Create a Bucket in Amazon S3

Now that you have a HelloWorld state machine, you need an Amazon S3 bucket. In Step 3 of this tutorial, you set up a rule so that when a file is added to this bucket, CloudWatch Events triggers an execution of the state machine.

1. Navigate to the Amazon S3 console, and then choose Create bucket.
2. Enter a Bucket name, such as username-sfn-tutorial.
   Note Bucket names must be unique across all existing bucket names in all AWS Regions in Amazon S3. Use your own username to make this name unique. You need to create all resources in the same AWS Region.
3. Choose Create.

Step 2: Create a Trail in AWS CloudTrail

After you create an Amazon S3 bucket, create a trail in CloudTrail.

For API events in Amazon S3 to match your CloudWatch Events rule, you must configure a trail in CloudTrail to receive those events.

1. Navigate to the AWS CloudTrail console, choose View trails, and then choose Create trail.
2. For Trail name, enter S3Event.
3. On the S3 tab, choose Add S3 bucket.
4. For Bucket name, enter the name of the Amazon S3 bucket you created earlier: username-sfn-tutorial.
5. Under Storage location, choose Yes next to Create a new S3 bucket.
6. For S3 bucket, enter a name for a new bucket to store information about the actions of the Amazon S3 bucket you created earlier.
   Note This bucket name must be unique across all of Amazon S3. Include your username in the bucket name so that the name will be unique: username-sfn-tutorial-storage.
7. Choose Create.

Step 3: Create a CloudWatch Events Rule

After you have a state machine, and have created the Amazon S3 bucket and a trail in AWS CloudTrail, create your Amazon CloudWatch Events rule.

Note You must configure CloudWatch Events in the same AWS Region as the Amazon S3 bucket.

To create the rule

1. Navigate to the CloudWatch console, choose Events, and then choose Create Rule.
   The Step 1: Create rule page is displayed.
2. In Event source, choose Event Pattern.
3. For **Service Name**, choose **Simple Storage Service (S3)**.
4. For **Event Type**, choose **Object Level Operations**.
5. Choose **Specific operation(s)**, and then choose **PutObject**.
   
   **Note**
   
   If the object size is bigger than the Multipart threshold used in the `PutObject` operation, the AWS CloudTrail API logged will be `CompleteMultipartUpload` instead of `PutObject`. See, [Multipart Upload Overview in the AWS CloudTrail User Guide](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/events/CloudTrailEventsLogFormat.html).

6. Choose **Specific bucket(s) by name** and enter the bucket name you created in Step 1 (`username-sfn-tutorial`).

The **Event Source** page should look like the following.

### Step 1: Create rule

Create rules to invoke Targets based on Events happening in your AWS environment.

**Event Source**

Build or customize an Event Pattern or set a Schedule to invoke Targets.

1. Click **Event Pattern**.
2. Select **Service Name**: **Simple Storage Service (S3)**.
3. Select **Event Type**: **Object Level Operations**.
4. Click **Specific operation(s)**.
5. Select **PutObject**.
6. Click **Specific bucket(s) by name**.
7. Enter `username-sfn-tutorial`.

---

**To create the target**

1. In the **Targets** section, choose **Add target**.
2. From the list, choose **Step Functions state machine**, and in the **State machine** list, choose the state machine from Step 1 (`Helloworld`).
3. CloudWatch Events can create the IAM role that your event needs to run:
   
   - To create an IAM role automatically, choose **Create a new role for this specific resource**.
   - To use an IAM role that you created before, choose **Use existing role**.
4. Choose **Configure details**.

The **Step 2: Configure rule details** page is displayed.

5. Enter a **Name** for your rule (for example, S3StepFunctions), choose **Enabled** for **State**, and then choose **Create rule**.

The **Configure rule details** section should look like the following.

**Step 2: Configure rule details**

**Rule definition**

- **Name**: S3-StepFunctions
- **Description**: Launch a state machine execution when files are added to S3
- **State**: Enabled

The rule is created and the **Rules** page is displayed, listing all your CloudWatch Events rules.

**Step 4: Test the CloudWatch Rule**

Now that everything is in place, test adding a file to the Amazon S3 bucket, and then look at the input of the resulting state machine execution.

1. Add a file to your Amazon S3 bucket.

   Navigate to the Amazon S3 console, select the bucket you created (username-sfn-tutorial), and then choose **Upload**.

2. Add a file (`test.png` in the following example), and then choose **Upload**.

   This launches an execution of your state machine, passing information from AWS CloudTrail as the input.

3. Check the execution for your state machine.

   Navigate to the Step Functions console and select the state machine used in your CloudWatch Events rule (`helloworld`).

4. Select the most recent execution of that state machine and expand the **Input** section.

   This input includes information such as the bucket name and the object name. In a real-world use case, a state machine can use this input to perform actions on that object.

**Example of Execution Input**

The following example shows typical input to the state machine execution.
Example of Execution Input

```json
{
  "version": "0",
  "id": "b6df9246-b781-44f8-a026-f1c1ab2c61f0",
  "detail-type": "AWS API Call via CloudTrail",
  "source": "aws.s3",
  "account": "123456789012",
  "time": "2018-09-12T00:25:10Z",
  "region": "us-east-2",
  "resources": [],
  "detail": {
    "eventVersion": "1.05",
    "userIdentity": {
      "type": "IAMUser",
      "principalId": "AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
      "arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/username",
      "accountId": "123456789012",
      "accessKeyId": "AKIAI44QH8DH8EXAMPLE",
      "userName": "username",
      "sessionContext": {
        "attributes": {
          "creationDate": "2018-09-11T20:10:38Z",
          "mfaAuthenticated": true
        }
      },
      "invokedBy": "signin.amazonaws.com"
    },
    "eventTime": "2018-09-12T00:25:10Z",
    "eventSource": "s3.amazonaws.com",
    "eventName": "PutObject",
    "awsRegion": "us-east-2",
    "sourceIPAddress": "203.0.113.34",
    "userIdentity": "signin.amazonaws.com",
    "requestParameters": {
      "X-Amz-Date": "20180912T002509Z",
      "bucketName": "username-sfn-tutorial",
      "X-Amz-Algorithm": "AWS4-HMAC-SHA256",
      "x-amz-acl": "private",
      "X-Amz-SignedHeaders": "content-type;host;x-amz-acl;x-amz-storage-class",
      "X-Amz-Expires": "300",
      "key": "test.png",
      "x-amz-storage-class": "STANDARD"
    },
    "responseElements": null,
    "additionalEventData": {
      "X-Amz-Id-2": "IOWQ4fDEXAMPLEQ+ey7N9WgVhSnQ6JEXAMPLEZb7hSQDASK+Jd1vEXAMPLEa3Km"
    },
    "requestID": "79104EXAMPLE8723",
    "eventType": "AwsApiCall",
    "recipientAccountId": "123456789012"
  }
}
```
Creating a Step Functions API Using API Gateway

You can use Amazon API Gateway to associate your AWS Step Functions APIs with methods in an API Gateway API. When an HTTPS request is sent to an API method, API Gateway invokes your Step Functions API actions.

This tutorial shows you how to create an API that uses one resource and the POST method to communicate with the StartExecution API action. You'll use the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) console to create a role for API Gateway. Then, you'll use the API Gateway console to create an API Gateway API, create a resource and method, and map the method to the StartExecution API action. Finally, you'll deploy and test your API. For more information about this API action, see StartExecution in the AWS Step Functions API Reference.

Note
Although Amazon API Gateway can start a Step Functions execution by calling StartExecution, you must call DescribeExecution to get the result.

Topics
• Step 1: Create an IAM Role for API Gateway (p. 47)
• Step 2: Create your API Gateway API (p. 47)
• Step 3: Test and Deploy the API Gateway API (p. 49)

Step 1: Create an IAM Role for API Gateway

Before you create your API Gateway API, you need to give API Gateway permission to call Step Functions API actions.

1. Sign in to the IAM console and choose Roles, Create role.
2. On the Select type of trusted entity page, under AWS service, select API Gateway from the list, and then choose Next: Permissions.
3. On the Attached permissions policy page, choose Next: Review.
4. On the Review page, enter APIGatewayToStepFunctions for Role name, and then choose Create role.

The IAM role appears in the list of roles.

5. Choose the name of your role and note the Role ARN, as shown in the following example.

    arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/APIGatewayToStepFunctions

Attach a policy to the IAM role

1. On the Roles page, search for your role (APIGatewayToStepFunctions), and then choose the role.
2. On the Permissions tab, choose Attach Policy.
3. On the Attach Policy page, search for AWSStepFunctionsFullAccess, choose the policy, and then choose Attach Policy.

Step 2: Create your API Gateway API

After you create your IAM role, you can create your custom API Gateway API.
Create the API

1. Navigate to the Amazon API Gateway console and choose Get Started.
2. On the Create new API page, choose New API.
3. In the Settings section, enter StartExecutionAPI for the API name, and then choose Create API.

Create a Resource

2. On the New Child Resource page, enter execution for Resource Name, and then choose Create Resource.

Create a POST Method

1. On the /execution Methods page, choose Actions, Create Method.
2. From the list, choose POST, and then select the check mark.

Configure the Method

On the /execution - POST - Setup page, configure the integration point for your method.

1. For Integration Type, choose AWS Service.
2. For AWS Region, choose a Region from the list.
   
   Note
   For Regions that currently support Step Functions, see Supported Regions (p. 2).
3. For AWS Service, choose Step Functions from the list.
4. For HTTP Method, choose POST from the list.
   
   Note
   All Step Functions API actions use the HTTP POST method.
5. For Action Type, choose Use action name.
6. For Action, enter StartExecution.
7. For Execution Role, enter the role ARN of the IAM role that you created earlier (p. 47), as shown in the following example.
Step 3: Test and Deploy the API Gateway API

Once you have created the API, test and deploy it.
Test the Communication between API Gateway and Step Functions


2. On the /execution - POST - Method Test page, copy the following request parameters into the Request Body section using the ARN of an existing state machine (or create a new state machine (p. 13)), and then choose Test.

```json
{
  "input": "{}
  "name": "MyExecution",
}
```

**Note**
For more information, see the StartExecution Request Syntax in the AWS Step Functions API Reference. If you don't want to include the ARN of your state machine in the body of your API Gateway call, you can configure a body-mapping template, as shown in the following example.

```json
{
  "input": "$util.escapeJavaScript($input.json(''))",
}
```

This approach enables you to have different state machines based on your development stages (for example, dev, test, and prod). To release an update, you need to change only the stage variable, as shown in the following example.

```json
{
  "input": "$util.escapeJavaScript($input.json(''))",
  "stateMachineArn": "$util.escapeJavaScript($stageVariables.get(arn:aws:states:us-east-1:123456789012:stateMachine:HelloWorld))"
}
```

3. The execution starts and the execution ARN and its epoch date are displayed under Response Body.

```json
{
  "startDate": 1486768956.878
}
```

**Note**
You can view the execution by choosing your state machine on the AWS Step Functions console.

Deploy your API

1. On the Resources page of StartExecutionAPI, choose Actions, Deploy API.

2. In the Deploy API dialog box, select [New Stage] from the Deployment stage list, enter alpha for Stage name, and then choose Deploy.
Test Your Deployment

1. On the Stages page of `StartExecutionAPI`, expand `alpha`, `/`, `/execution`, POST.
2. On the `alpha - POST - /execution` page, note the Invoke URL, as shown in the following example.

```plaintext
https://a1b2c3d4e5.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/alpha/execution
```

3. From the command line, run the `curl` command using the ARN of your state machine, and then invoke the URL of your deployment, as shown in the following example.

```plaintext
```

The execution ARN and its epoch date are returned, as shown in the following example.

```plaintext
{"executionArn":"arn:aws:states:us-east-1:123456789012:execution:HelloWorld:MyExecution","startDate":1.486772644911E9}
```

Iterating a Loop Using Lambda

In this tutorial, you implement a design pattern that uses a state machine and an AWS Lambda function to iterate a loop a specific number of times.

Use this design pattern any time you need to keep track of the number of loops in a state machine. This implementation can help you break up large tasks or long-running executions into smaller chunks, or to end an execution after a specific number of events. You can use a similar implementation to periodically end and restart a long-running execution to avoid exceeding service quotas for AWS Step Functions, AWS Lambda, or other AWS services.

Before you begin, go through the Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20) tutorial to ensure you have created the necessary IAM role, and are familiar with using Lambda and Step Functions together.

Topics
- Step 1: Create a Lambda Function to Iterate a Count (p. 51)
- Step 2: Test the Lambda Function (p. 52)
- Step 3: Create a State Machine (p. 53)
- Step 4: Start a New Execution (p. 56)

Step 1: Create a Lambda Function to Iterate a Count

By using a Lambda function you can track the number of iterations of a loop in your state machine. The following Lambda function receives input values for `count`, `index`, and `step`. It returns these values with an updated `index` and a Boolean value named `continue`. The Lambda function sets `continue` to `true` if the `index` is less than `count`.

Your state machine then implements a Choice state that executes some application logic if `continue` is `true`, or exits if it is `false`. 
To create the Lambda function

1. Sign in to the Lambda console, and then choose Create function.
2. In the Create function section, choose Author from scratch.
3. In the Basic information section, configure your Lambda function, as follows:
   a. For Function name, enter Iterator.
   b. For Runtime, choose Node.js 12.x.
   c. For Role, select Use an existing role.
   d. For Existing role, choose the Lambda role that you created in the Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20) tutorial.
      
      **Note**
      If the IAM role that you created doesn't appear in the list, the role might still need a few minutes to propagate to Lambda.
   e. Choose Create function.

   When your Lambda function is created, make a note of its Amazon Resource Name (ARN) in the upper-right corner of the page, as shown.

   ```
   arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:123456789012:function:Iterator
   ```

4. Copy the following code for the Lambda function into the Configuration section of the Iterator page in the Lambda console.

   ```
   exports.iterator = function iterator (event, context, callback) {
       let index = event.iterator.index
       let step = event.iterator.step
       let count = event.iterator.count

       index += step

       callback(null, {
           index,
           step,
           count,
           continue: index < count
       })
   }
   ```

   This code accepts input values for count, index, and step. It increments the index by the value of step and returns these values, and the Boolean continue. The value of continue is true if index is less than count.

5. Choose Save.

**Step 2: Test the Lambda Function**

Run your Lambda function with numeric values to see it in operation. You can provide input values for your Lambda function that mimic an iteration, to see what output you get with specific input values.

To test your Lambda function

1. In the Configure test event dialog box, choose Create new test event, and then enter TestIterator for Event name.
2. Replace the example data with the following.
These values mimic what would come from your state machine during an iteration. The Lambda function will increment the index and return continue as true. When the index isn't less than the count, it returns continue as false. For this test, the index has already incremented to 5. The results should increment the index to 6 and set continue to true.

3. Choose Create.
4. On the Iterator page in your Lambda console, be sure TestIterator is listed, and then choose Test.

The results of the test are displayed at the top of the page. Choose Details and review the result.

Note
If you set index to 9 for this test, the index increments to 10, and continue is false.

Step 3: Create a State Machine

1. Sign in to the Step Functions console, and then choose Create a state machine.

   Important
   Ensure that your state machine is under the same AWS account and Region as the Lambda function you created earlier.

2. On the Define state machine page, choose Author with code snippets. For Type, choose Standard. For Name, enter IterateCount.

   Note
   State machine, execution, and activity names must be 1–80 characters in length, must be unique for your account and AWS Region, and must not contain any of the following:
   - Whitespace
   - Wildcard characters (? *)
   - Bracket characters (< > { } [ ])
   - Special characters (: ; \ | ^ ~ $ # % & ` " )
   - Control characters (\u0000 - \u001f or \u007f - \u009f).

   Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

   Select Next.
3. Create or enter an IAM role:

- To create an IAM role for Step Functions, select Create an IAM role for me, and enter a Name for your role.
- If you have previously created an IAM role (p. 254) with the correct permissions for your state machine, select Choose an existing IAM role. Select a role from the list, or provide an ARN for that role.

**Note**
If you delete the IAM role that Step Functions creates, Step Functions can’t recreate it later. Similarly, if you modify the role (for example, by removing Step Functions from the principals in the IAM policy), Step Functions can’t restore its original settings later.

4. The following code describes a state machine with the following states.

- **ConfigureCount** – Sets the default values for count, index, and step.

  ```json
  "ConfigureCount": {
      "Type": "Pass",
      "Result": {
        "count": 10,
        "index": 0,
        "step": 1
      },
      "ResultPath": "$.iterator",
      "Next": "Iterator"
  },
  ```

- **Iterator** – References the Lambda function you created earlier, passing in the values configured in ConfigureCount.

  ```json
  "Iterator": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "ResultPath": "$.iterator",
      "Next": "IsCountReached"
  },
  ```

- **IsCountReached** – A choice state that either runs your sample work again or goes to Done, based on a Boolean value returned from your Iterator Lambda function.

  ```json
  "IsCountReached": {
      "Type": "Choice",
      "Choices": [
        {
          "Variable": "$.iterator.continue",
          "BooleanEquals": true,
          "Next": "ExampleWork"
        }
      ],
      "Default": "Done"
  },
  ```

- **ExampleWork** – A stub for the work you want to accomplish in your execution. In this example, it’s a pass state. In an actual implementation, this would be a task state. See Task (p. 95).

- **Done** – The end state of your execution.

In the Code pane, add the following state machine definition using the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the Lambda function that you created earlier (p. 52).
Be sure to update the ARN in the `Iterator` state above, so that it references the Lambda function you created earlier. For more information about the Amazon States Language, see State Machine Structure (p. 93).

5. Use the graph in the Visual Workflow pane to check that your Amazon States Language code describes your state machine correctly.

This graph shows the logic expressed in the previous state machine code.
If you don't see the graph, choose ☰ in the Visual Workflow pane.

6. Choose Next.

7. Create or enter an IAM role:

   - To create an IAM role for Step Functions, select Create an IAM role for me, and enter a Name for your role.
   - If you have previously created an IAM role (p. 254) with the correct permissions for your state machine, select Choose an existing IAM role. Select a role from the list, or provide an ARN for that role.

   **Note**
   If you delete the IAM role that Step Functions creates, Step Functions can't recreate it later. Similarly, if you modify the role (for example, by removing Step Functions from the principals in the IAM policy), Step Functions can't restore its original settings later.

8. Choose Create state machine.

**Step 4: Start a New Execution**

After you create your state machine, you can start an execution.


2. (Optional) To help identify your execution, you can specify an ID for it in the Enter an execution name box. If you don't enter an ID, Step Functions generates a unique ID automatically.

   **Note**
   Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

3. Choose Start Execution.

A new execution of your state machine starts, showing your running execution.
The execution increments in steps, tracking the count using your Lambda function. On each iteration, it performs the example work referenced in the ExampleWork state in your state machine.

4. (Optional) In the Execution Details section, choose the Info tab to view the Execution Status and the Started and Closed timestamps.

5. When the count reaches the number specified in the ConfigureCount state in your state machine, the execution quits iterating and ends.

Continuing as a New Execution

This tutorial shows you how to create a state machine with a Lambda function that can start a new execution, continuing your ongoing work in that new execution.
AWS Step Functions is designed to run workflows that have a finite duration and number of steps. Executions have a maximum duration of one year, and a maximum of 25,000 events (see Quotas for Standard Workflows (p. 243)).

However, you can create a state machine that uses an AWS Lambda function to start a new execution, before allowing the current execution to terminate. This enables you to have a state machine that can break large jobs into smaller workflows, or to have a state machine that runs indefinitely.

This tutorial builds on the concept of using an external Lambda function to modify your workflow, which was demonstrated in the Iterating a Loop Using Lambda (p. 51) tutorial. You use the same Lambda function (Iterator) to iterate a loop for a specific number of times. In addition, you create another Lambda function to start a new execution of your workflow, and to decrement a count each time it starts a new execution. By setting the number of executions in the input, this state machine ends and restarts an execution a specified number of times.

The state machine you'll create implements the following states.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ConfigureCount</td>
<td>A Pass (p. 94) state that configures the count, index, and step values that the Iterator Lambda function uses to step through iterations of work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iterator</td>
<td>A Task (p. 95) state that references the Iterator Lambda function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IsCountReached</td>
<td>A Choice (p. 106) state that uses a Boolean value from the Iterator function to decide if the state machine should continue the example work, or move to the ShouldRestart choice state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExampleWork</td>
<td>In this example, ExampleWork is a Pass state that represents the Task state that would perform work in an actual implementation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Prerequisites

Before you begin, go through the Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20) tutorial to ensure you have created an initial IAM role, and that you are familiar with using Lambda and Step Functions together.

Topics

• Step 1: Create an Iterate Lambda Function to Iterate a Count (p. 59)
• Step 2: Create a Restart Lambda Function to Start a New Step Functions Execution (p. 61)
• Step 3: Create a State Machine (p. 62)
• Step 4: Update the IAM Policy (p. 64)
• Step 5: Run an Execution (p. 64)

Step 1: Create an Iterate Lambda Function to Iterate a Count

Note

If you have completed the Iterating a Loop Using Lambda (p. 51) tutorial, you can skip this step and use that Lambda function.

This section and the Iterating a Loop Using Lambda (p. 51) tutorial show how you can use a Lambda function to track a count so that you can track the number of iterations of a loop in your state machine.

The following Lambda function receives input values for count, index, and step. It returns these values with an updated index and a Boolean named continue. The Lambda function sets continue to true if the index is less than count.

Your state machine then implements a Choice state that executes some application logic if continue is true, or moves on to ShouldRestart if continue is false.

Create the Iterate Lambda function

1. Open the Lambda console, and then choose Create function.
2. In the Create function section, choose Author from scratch.
3. In the Author with code snippets section, configure your Lambda function, as follows:
   a. For Name, enter Iterator.
   b. For Runtime, choose Node.js 10.15.
   c. For Role, select Choose an existing role.
   d. For Existing role, choose the Lambda role that you created in the Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20) tutorial.
Step 1: Create an Iterate Lambda Function to Iterate a Count

Note
If the IAM role that you created doesn't appear in the list, the role might still need a few minutes to propagate to Lambda.

e. Choose Create function.

When your Lambda function is created, make a note of its Amazon Resource Name (ARN) in the upper-right corner of the page, for example:

```
arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:123456789012:function:Iterator
```

4. Copy the following code for the Lambda function into the Configuration section of the Iterator page in the Lambda console.

```javascript
exports.iterator = function iterator (event, context, callback) {
    let index = event.iterator.index
    let step = event.iterator.step
    let count = event.iterator.count

    index += step
    callback(null, {
        index,
        step,
        count,
        continue: index < count
    })
}
```

This code accepts input values for count, index, and step. It increments the index by the value of step and returns these values, and the Boolean value of continue. The value of continue is true if index is less than count.

5. Choose Save.

Test the Iterate Lambda Function

To see your Iterate function working, run it with numeric values. You can provide input values for your Lambda function that mimic an iteration to see what output you get with specific input values.

To test your Lambda function

1. In the Configure test event dialog box, choose Create new test event, and then type TestIterator for Event name.
2. Replace the example data with the following.

```json
{
    "Comment": "Test my Iterator function",
    "iterator": {
        "count": 10,
        "index": 5,
        "step": 1
    }
}
```

These values mimic what would come from your state machine during an iteration. The Lambda function increments the index and returns continue as true. When the index is not less than the...
count, it returns continue as false. For this test, the index has already incremented to 5. The results should increment the index to 6 and set continue to true.

3. Choose Create.
4. On the Iterator page in your Lambda console, be sure TestIterator is listed, and then choose Test.

The results of the test are displayed at the top of the page. Choose Details and review the result.

```
{
  "index": 6,
  "step": 1,
  "count": 10,
  "continue": true
}
```

Note
---
If you set index to 9 for this test, the index increments to 10, and continue is false.

### Step 2: Create a Restart Lambda Function to Start a New Step Functions Execution

1. Open the Lambda console, and then choose Create function.
2. In the Author with code snippets section, configure your Lambda function, as follows:
   a. For Name, enter Restart.
   b. For Runtime, choose Node.js 10.15.
   c. For Role, select Choose an existing role.
   d. Under Existing role, choose the role that includes the IAM policy you created previously.
   e. Choose Create function.

   When your Lambda function is created, make a note of its Amazon Resource Name (ARN) in the upper-right corner of the page, for example:

   `arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:123456789012:function:Restart`

3. Copy the following code for the Lambda function into the Configuration section of the Restart page in the Lambda console.

   The following code decrements a count of the number of executions, and starts a new execution of your state machine, including the decremented value.

   ```javascript
   var aws = require('aws-sdk');
   var sfn = new aws.StepFunctions();

   exports.restart = function(event, context, callback) {
     let StateMachineArn = event.restart.StateMachineArn;
     event.restart.executionCount -= 1;
     event = JSON.stringify(event);

     let params = {
       input: event,
       stateMachineArn: StateMachineArn
     };

     sfn.startExecution(params, function(err, data) {
   ```
Step 3: Create a State Machine

Now that you've created your two Lambda functions, create a state machine. In this state machine, the ShouldRestart and Restart states are how you break your work across multiple executions.

Example ShouldRestart Choice state

This excerpt of your state machine shows the ShouldRestart Choice (p. 106) state. This state determines whether you should restart the execution.

```json
"ShouldRestart": {
  "Type": "Choice",
  "Choices": [
    {
      "Variable": "$\.restart.executionCount",
      "NumericGreaterThan": 1,
      "Next": "Restart"
    }
  ]
}
```

The $\.restart.executionCount value is included in the input of the initial execution. It's decremented by one each time the Restart function is called, and then placed into the input for each subsequent execution.

Example Restart Task state

This excerpt of your state machine shows the Restart Task (p. 95) state. This state uses the Lambda function you created earlier to restart the execution, and to decrement the count to track the remaining number of executions to start.

```json
"Restart": {
  "Type": "Task",
  "Next": "Done"
}
```

1. On the Step Functions console, choose Create a state machine.
2. Select Author with code snippets. For Type, choose Standard, and enter ContinueAsNew as your state machine name.
3. Paste the following into the Code pane.

Example ContinueAsNew state machine

```json
{
  "Comment": "Continue-as-new State Machine Example",
  "StartAt": "ConfigureCount",
  "States": {
    "ConfigureCount": {
      "Type": "Pass",
```
4. Update the Resource string in the Restart and Iterator states to reference the respective Lambda functions you created earlier.

5. Choose Next.

6. Create or enter an IAM role:

   - To create an IAM role for Step Functions, select Create an IAM role for me, and enter a Name for your role.
• If you have previously created an IAM role (p. 254) with the correct permissions for your state machine, select Choose an existing IAM role. Select a role from the list, or provide an ARN for that role.

**Note**
If you delete the IAM role that Step Functions creates, Step Functions can’t recreate it later. Similarly, if you modify the role (for example, by removing Step Functions from the principals in the IAM policy), Step Functions can’t restore its original settings later.

7. Choose Create state machine.

**Step 4: Update the IAM Policy**

To ensure your Lambda function has permissions to start a new Step Functions execution, attach an inline policy to the IAM role you use for your Restart Lambda function. For more information, see Embedding Inline Policies in the IAM User Guide.

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Sid": "VisualEditor0",
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "states:StartExecution"
            ],
            "Resource": "*"
        }
    ]
}
```

**Note**
You can update the "Resource": "*" line in the previous example to reference the ARN of your ContinueAsNew state machine. This restricts the policy so that it can only start an execution of that specific state machine.

**Step 5: Run an Execution**

To start an execution, provide input that includes the ARN of the state machine and an executionCount for how many times it should start a new execution.

1. On the ContinueAsNew page, choose New execution.
2. In the Input section, on the New execution page, enter Test1 for the execution name. Then enter the following in the Input.

```json
{
    "restart": {
        "executionCount": 4
    }
}
```
3. Update the `StateMachineArn` field with the ARN for your `ContinueAsNew` state machine.
4. Choose **Start Execution**.

The **Visual Workflow** graph displays the first of the four executions. Before it completes, it will pass through the `Restart` state and start a new execution.

With this execution complete, you can look at the next execution that's running. Select the **ContinueAsNew** link at the top to see the list of executions. You should see both the recently closed execution, and an ongoing execution that the `Restart` Lambda function kicked off.

When all the executions are complete, you should see four successful executions in the list. The first execution that was started displays the name you chose, and subsequent executions have a generated name.
Using Code Snippets to Create a State to Send an Amazon SNS message

AWS Step Functions integrates with certain AWS services, such as Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS). In this tutorial, you generate a code snippet that sends a text message using Amazon SNS. You pass parameters directly to Amazon SNS from your state machine definition.

For more information about how Step Functions integrates with other AWS services directly from the Amazon States Language, see:

- Service Integrations (p. 144)
- Code Snippets (p. 152)
- Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150)

Topics

- Step 1: Generate a Code Snippet (p. 66)
- Step 2: Update Your State Machine Definition (p. 68)
- Step 3: Start an Execution (p. 69)

Step 1: Generate a Code Snippet

To generate a code snippet, you must start by editing a state machine definition.

2. Choose Author with code snippets. For Type, choose Standard, then enter a name for your state machine.

The default HelloWorld state machine is displayed in the State machine definition.

3. For Generate Code Snippet, choose Amazon SNS: Publish a message.

The Generate SNS Publish task state window is displayed.
4. On the **Generate SNS Publish task state** page, under **Destination**, choose **Enter phone number** and then enter your cell phone number.

Use the format `[+][country code][subscriber number including area code]`. For example: `+12065550123`.

5. Under **Message**, choose **Enter message**, and then enter some text to send as an SMS message.

   **Note**
   You can also choose **Specify message at runtime with state input**. This option enables you to use a reference path to select a message from the input of your state machine execution. For more information, see:
   - Input and Output Processing in Step Functions (p. 120)
   - Reference Paths (p. 122)
   - Pass State Input as Parameters Using Paths (p. 151)

As you configure options on the **Generate SNS Publish task state** page, the **Preview** section updates with the Amazon States Language code for a task state with the necessary options.

For example, choose these options.

With these options selected, this is the generated code snippet that's displayed in the **Preview** area.

```json
"Amazon SNS: Publish a message": {  
  "Type": "Task",  
  "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sns:publish",  
  "Parameters": {  
    "Message": "Hello from Step Functions!",  
    "PhoneNumber": "+12065550123"  
  },  
  "Next": "NEXT_STATE"  
}
```
Step 2: Update Your State Machine Definition

Now that you have configured your Amazon SNS options, paste the generated code snippet into your state machine definition and update the existing Amazon States Language code.

1. After you have reviewed the code in the Preview section, choose Copy to clipboard.
2. Place your cursor after the closing bracket of the HelloWorld state in your state machine definition.

```
1 {  
2   "StartAt": "HelloWorld",
3   "States": { 
4     "HelloWorld": { 
5       "Type": "Pass",
6       "Result": "Hello World!",
7       "End": true 
8     }
9    }
10 }
```

Enter a comma, press Enter to start a new line, and then paste your code snippet into your state machine definition.

3. Change the last line of the Amazon SNS: Publish a message state from "Next": "NEXT_STATE" to "End": true.
4. Change the last line of the HelloWorld state from "End": true to "Next": "Amazon SNS: Publish a message".
5. Choose ☑️ in the Visual Workflow pane. Check the visual workflow to ensure your new state is included.

6. (Optional) Indent the JSON to make your code easier to read. Your state machine definition should look like this.

```
{
   "StartAt":"HelloWorld",
   "States":{
      "HelloWorld":{
```

---

**Note**

Under the Task state options section, you can also configure Retry, Catch, and TimeoutSeconds options. See Error Handling in Step Functions (p. 137).
7. Choose **Next**.
8. Create or enter an IAM role:
   - To create an IAM role for Step Functions, select **Create an IAM role for me**, and enter a **Name** for your role.
   - If you have previously created an IAM role (p. 254) with the correct permissions for your state machine, select **Choose an existing IAM role**. Select a role from the list, or provide an ARN for that role.

   **Note**
   If you delete the IAM role that Step Functions creates, Step Functions can't recreate it later. Similarly, if you modify the role (for example, by removing Step Functions from the principals in the IAM policy), Step Functions can't restore its original settings later.

9. Choose **Create state machine**.

### Step 3: Start an Execution

After it's created, the page from your new state machine is displayed.

1. Review the details of your state machine, including the Amazon Resource Name (ARN), the related IAM ARN, and the state machine definition.
2. On the **Executions** tab, choose **Start execution**.
3. (Optional) Enter a name for your execution.

   **Note**
   If we had chosen **Specify message at runtime with state input** when creating our Amazon SNS code snippet, we would include a message in the **Input - optional**. For now you can use the default state input.

   Choose **Start execution**.

If you configured a valid cell phone number in your code snippet, you should have received a text message from Amazon SNS that was triggered directly by your state machine execution.

### Deploying an Example Human Approval Project

This tutorial shows you how to deploy a human approval project that allows an AWS Step Functions execution to pause during a task, and wait for a user to respond to an email. The workflow progresses to the next state once the user has approved the task to proceed.
Deploying the AWS CloudFormation stack included in this tutorial will create all necessary resources, including:

- Amazon API Gateway resources
- An AWS Lambda function
- An AWS Step Functions state machine
- An Amazon Simple Notification Service email topic
- Related AWS Identity and Access Management roles and permissions

**Note**
You will need to provide a valid email address that you have access to when you create the AWS CloudFormation stack.

For more information, see Working with CloudFormation Templates and the AWS::StepFunctions::StateMachine resource in the AWS CloudFormation User Guide.

**Topics**
- Step 1: Create an AWS CloudFormation Template (p. 70)
- Step 2: Create a Stack (p. 70)
- Step 3: Approve the Amazon SNS Subscription (p. 71)
- Step 4: Run an Execution (p. 71)
- AWS CloudFormation Template Source Code (p. 73)

### Step 1: Create an AWS CloudFormation Template

1. Copy the example code from the AWS CloudFormation Template Source Code (p. 73) section.

2. Paste the source of the AWS CloudFormation template into a file on your local machine.
   
   For this example the file is called `human-approval.yaml`.

### Step 2: Create a Stack

1. Log into the AWS CloudFormation console.
2. Choose Create Stack.
3. Under Choose a template, select Upload a template to Amazon S3 and then Choose File.
4. Browse to the `human-approval.yaml` file you created earlier that includes the template source code (p. 73).
5. Choose Open and then Next.
6. Under Specify Details enter a Stack name.
7. Under Parameters enter a valid Email address and choose Next.
8. On the Options page, scroll down and choose Next.
9. On the Review page, choose I acknowledge that AWS CloudFormation might create IAM resources and then choose Create.

AWS CloudFormation begins to create your stack and displays the CREATE_IN_PROGRESS status. When the process is complete, AWS CloudFormation displays the CREATE_COMPLETE status.

10. (Optional) To display the resources in your stack, select the stack and choose the Resources tab.

---

### Step 3: Approve the Amazon SNS Subscription

Once the Amazon SNS topic is created, you will receive an email requesting that you confirm subscription.

1. Open the email account you provided when you created the AWS CloudFormation stack.
2. Open the message AWS Notification - Subscription Confirmation from no-reply@sns.amazonaws.com

   The email will list the Amazon Resource Name for the Amazon SNS topic, and a confirmation link.
3. Choose the confirm subscription link.

---

### Subscription confirmed!

You have subscribed to the topic: HumanApprovalExample-SNS:HumanApprovalEmailTopic-AAA1KMNKAY7M3

Your subscription's id is: arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:888888888888:HumanApprovalExample-SNS:HumanApprovalEmailTopic-AAA1KMNKAY7M3:358f0d9-ce61-4cc7-b6f-520c3e0e6e1f

If it was not your intention to subscribe, click here to unsubscribe.

---

### Step 4: Run an Execution

1. Sign in to the Step Functions console.
2. On the State machines page, choose HumanApprovalLambdaStateMachine.
3. Choose Start execution.
4. Enter a name for your execution, such as ApprovalTest.
5. (Optional) enters some input for the execution.
6. Choose **Start execution**.

The **ApprovalTest** execution starts, and pauses at the **Lambda Callback** task.

7. In the email account you used for the Amazon SNS topic earlier, open the message with the subject **Required approval from AWS Step Functions**.

The message includes separate URLs for **Approve** and **Reject**.

8. Choose the **Approve** URL.

The workflow continues based on your choice.
Use this AWS CloudFormation template to deploy an example of a human approval process workflow.

```yaml
AWSTemplateFormatVersion: "2010-09-09"
Description: "AWS Step Functions Human based task example. It sends an email with an HTTP URL for approval."
Parameters:
  Email:
    Type: String
    AllowedPattern: "^[a-zA-Z0-9_.+-]+@[a-zA-Z0-9-]+\.[a-zA-Z0-9-]+\$"  
    ConstraintDescription: Must be a valid email address.
Resources:
  # Begin API Gateway Resources
  ExecutionApi:
    Type: "AWS::ApiGateway::RestApi"
    Properties:
      Name: "Human approval endpoint"
      Description: "HTTP Endpoint backed by API Gateway and Lambda"
      FailOnWarnings: true
  ExecutionResource:
    Type: 'AWS::ApiGateway::Resource'
    Properties:
      RestApiId: !Ref ExecutionApi
      ParentId: !GetAtt "ExecutionApi.RootResourceId"
      PathPart: execution
  ExecutionMethod:
    Type: "AWS::ApiGateway::Method"
    Properties:
      AuthorizationType: NONE
      HttpMethod: GET
      Integration:
        Type: AWS
        IntegrationHttpMethod: POST
        Uri: !Sub "arn:aws:apigateway:${AWS::Region}:lambda:path/2015-03-31/functions/${LambdaApprovalFunction.Arn}/invocations"
        IntegrationResponses:
          - StatusCode: 302
            ResponseParameters:
              method.response.header.Location: "integration.response.body.headers.Location"
            RequestTemplates:
              application/json: |
                |
                  "body" : $input.json('"'),
                  "headers": { #foreach($header in $input.params().header.keySet())
                    "$header": "$util.escapeJavaScript($input.params().header.get($header))"
                  } #if($foreach.hasNext),#end
                } #if($foreach.hasNext),#end
                
        #foreach($param in $input.params().path.keySet())
                "$param": "$util.escapeJavaScript($input.params().path.get($param))"
          #if($foreach.hasNext),#end
          
      RequestTemplates:
        application/json: |
          |
            "body" : $input.json('"'),
            "headers": { #foreach($header in $input.params().header.keySet())
              "$header": "$util.escapeJavaScript($input.params().header.get($header))"
            } #if($foreach.hasNext),#end
            
            "method": "$context.httpMethod",
            "params": { #foreach($param in $input.params().path.keySet())
              "$param": "$util.escapeJavaScript($input.params().path.get($param))"
            } #if($foreach.hasNext),#end
            
            "query": { #foreach($queryParam in $input.params().queryParams().keySet())
              "$queryParam": "$util.escapeJavaScript($input.params().querystring.get($queryParam))"
            } #if($foreach.hasNext),#end
          }
```
"$queryParam":
"$util.escapeJavaScript($input.params().queryString.get($queryParam))"

#if($foreach.hasNext),#end

#if($foreach.hasNext),#end

ResourceId: !Ref ExecutionResource
RestApiId: !Ref ExecutionApi
MethodResponses:
  - StatusCode: 302
    ResponseParameters:
      method.response.header.Location: true

ApiGatewayAccount:
  Type: 'AWS::ApiGateway::Account'
  Properties:
    CloudWatchRoleArn: !GetAtt "ApiGatewayCloudWatchLogsRole.Arn"

ApiGatewayCloudWatchLogsRole:
  Type: 'AWS::IAM::Role'
  Properties:
    AssumeRolePolicyDocument:
      Version: "2012-10-17"
      Statement:
        - Effect: Allow
          Principal:
            Service:
              - apigateway.amazonaws.com
          Action:
            - 'sts:AssumeRole'
        Policies:
          - PolicyName: ApiGatewayLogsPolicy
            PolicyDocument:
              Version: 2012-10-17
              Statement:
                - Effect: Allow
                  Action:
                    - "logs:*"
                  Resource: !Sub "arn:${AWS::Partition}:logs::*:*:*:"

ExecutionApiStage:
  DependsOn:
  - ApiGatewayAccount
  Type: 'AWS::ApiGateway::Stage'
  Properties:
    DeploymentId: !Ref ApiDeployment
    MethodSettings:
      - DataTraceEnabled: true
      - HttpMethod: '*'
      - LoggingLevel: INFO
      - ResourcePath: /*
    RestApiId: !Ref ExecutionApi
    StageName: states

ApiDeployment:
  Type: "AWS::ApiGateway::Deployment"
  DependsOn:
    - ExecutionMethod
  Properties:
    RestApiId: !Ref ExecutionApi
    StageName: DummyStage

# End API Gateway Resources

# Begin
# Lambda that will be invoked by API Gateway
LambdaApprovalFunction:
  Type: 'AWS::Lambda::Function'
  Properties:
    Code:
      Fn::Sub: |
      const AWS = require('aws-sdk');
      var redirectToStepFunctions = function(lambdaArn, statemachineName, executionName, callback) {
        const lambdaArnTokens = lambdaArn.split(':');
        const partition = lambdaArnTokens[1];
        const region = lambdaArnTokens[3];
        const accountId = lambdaArnTokens[4];

        console.log("partition=" + partition);
        console.log("region=" + region);
        console.log("accountId=" + accountId);

        const executionArn = "arn:" + partition + ":states:" + region + ":" + accountId + "::execution:" + statemachineName + ":" + executionName;
        console.log("executionArn=" + executionArn);

        callback(null, {
          statusCode: 302,
          headers: {
            Location: url
          }
        });
      };

    exports.handler = (event, context, callback) => {
      console.log('Event= ' + JSON.stringify(event));
      const action = event.query.action;
      const taskToken = event.query.taskToken;
      const statemachineName = event.query.sm;
      const executionName = event.query.ex;

      const stepfunctions = new AWS.StepFunctions();

      var message = "";

      if (action === "approve") {
        message = { "Status": "Approved! Task approved by ${Email}" };  
      } else if (action === "reject") {
        message = { "Status": "Rejected! Task rejected by ${Email}" }; 
      } else {
        console.error("Unrecognized action. Expected: approve, reject.");
        callback({"Status": "Failed to process the request. Unrecognized Action."}); 
      }

      stepfunctions.sendTaskSuccess({
        output: JSON.stringify(message),
        taskToken: event.query.taskToken
      }).promise()
        .then(function(data) {
          redirectToStepFunctions(context.invokedFunctionArn, statemachineName, executionName, callback);
        }).catch(function(err) {
          console.error(err, err.stack);
          callback(err);
        });
    }
Description: Lambda function that callback to AWS Step Functions
FunctionName: LambdaApprovalFunction
Handler: index.handler
Role: !GetAtt "LambdaApiGatewayIAMRole.Arn"
Runtime: nodejs12.x

LambdaApiGatewayInvoke:
  Type: "AWS::Lambda::Permission"
  Properties:
    Action: "lambda:InvokeFunction"
    FunctionName: !GetAtt "LambdaApprovalFunction.Arn"
    Principal: "apigateway.amazonaws.com"
    SourceArn: !Sub "arn:aws:execute-api:${AWS::Region}:${AWS::AccountId}:${ExecutionApi}/*"

LambdaApiGatewayIAMRole:
  Type: "AWS::IAM::Role"
  Properties:
    AssumeRolePolicyDocument:
      Version: "2012-10-17"
      Statement:
        - Action:
          "sts:AssumeRole"
        Effect: "Allow"
        Principal:
          Service:
            "lambda.amazonaws.com"
    Policies:
      - PolicyName: CloudWatchLogsPolicy
        PolicyDocument:
          Statement:
            - Effect: Allow
              Action:
                "logs:*"
              Resource: !Sub "arn:${AWS::Partition}:logs::*:*:*"
      - PolicyName: StepFunctionsPolicy
        PolicyDocument:
          Statement:
            - Effect: Allow
              Action:
                "states:SendTaskFailure"
                "states:SendTaskSuccess"
              Resource: "*"

# End Lambda that will be invoked by API Gateway

# Begin state machine that publishes to Lambda and sends an email with the link for approval
HumanApprovalLambdaStateMachine:
  Type: AWS::StepFunctions::StateMachine
  Properties:
    RoleArn: !GetAtt LambdaStateMachineExecutionRole.Arn
    DefinitionString:
      Fn::Sub: |
        |
        "StartAt": "Lambda Callback",
        "TimeoutSeconds": 3600,
        "States": {
          "Lambda Callback": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "Resource": "arn:
            #{AWS::Partition}:states:::lambda:invoke.waitForTaskToken",
            "Parameters": {
              "FunctionName": "#{LambdaHumanApprovalSendEmailFunction.Arn}",
              "Payload": {
                "ExecutionContext.$": "$$"
"APIGatewayEndpoint": "https://${ExecutionApi}.execute-api.
${AWS::Region}.amazonaws.com/states"
},
"Next": "ManualApprovalChoiceState"
},
"ManualApprovalChoiceState": {
  "Type": "Choice",
  "Choices": [
    {
      "Variable": "$.Status",
      "StringEquals": "Approved! Task approved by ${Email}"
    }
  ]
},
"ApprovedPassState": {
  "Type": "Pass",
  "End": true
},
"RejectedPassState": {
  "Type": "Pass",
  "End": true
}
}
}

SNSHumanApprovalEmailTopic:
  Type: AWS::SNS::Topic
  Properties:
    Subscription:
      -
        Endpoint: !Sub ${Email}
        Protocol: email

LambdaHumanApprovalSendEmailFunction:
  Type: "AWS::Lambda::Function"
  Properties:
    Handler: "index.lambda_handler"
    Role: !GetAtt LambdaSendEmailExecutionRole.Arn
    Runtime: "nodejs12.x"
    Timeout: "25"
    Code:
      ZipFile:
        Fn::Sub: |
          console.log('Loading function');
          const AWS = require('aws-sdk');
          exports.lambda_handler = (event, context, callback) => {
            console.log('event= ' + JSON.stringify(event));
            console.log('context= ' + JSON.stringify(context));

            const executionContext = event.ExecutionContext;
            console.log('executionContext= ' + executionContext);

            const executionName = executionContext.Execution.Name;
            console.log('executionName= ' + executionName);

            const statemachineName = executionContext.StateMachine.Name;
            console.log('statemachineName= ' + statemachineName);

            const taskToken = executionContext.Task.Token;
console.log('taskToken= ' + taskToken);

const apigwEndpoint = event.APIGatewayEndpoint;
console.log('apigwEndpoint = ' + apigwEndpoint)

const approveEndpoint = apigwEndpoint + "/execution?action=approve&ex=" + executionName + "&sm=" + statemachineName + "+taskToken=" + encodeURIComponent(taskToken);
console.log('approveEndpoint= ' + approveEndpoint);

const rejectEndpoint = apigwEndpoint + "/execution?action=reject&ex=" + executionName + "&sm=" + statemachineName + "+taskToken=" + encodeURIComponent(taskToken);
console.log('rejectEndpoint= ' + rejectEndpoint);

const emailSnsTopic = "$SNSHumanApprovalEmailTopic";
console.log('emailSnsTopic= ' + emailSnsTopic);

var emailMessage = 'Welcome! 

This is an email requiring an approval for a step functions execution. 

Please check the following information and click "Approve" link if you want to approve. 

Execution Name -> ' + executionName + '

Approve ' + approveEndpoint + '

Reject ' + rejectEndpoint + '

Thanks for using Step functions!

const sns = new AWS.SNS();
var params = {
    Message: emailMessage,
    Subject: "Required approval from AWS Step Functions",
    TopicArn: emailSnsTopic
};
sns.publish(params)
    .promise()
    .then(function(data) {
        console.log("MessageID is " + data.MessageId);
        callback(null);
    }).catch(
        function(err) {
            console.error(err, err.stack);
            callback(err);
    });

LambdaStateMachineExecutionRole:
Type: "AWS::IAM::Role"
Properties:
AssumeRolePolicyDocument:
  Version: "2012-10-17"
  Statement:
    - Effect: Allow
      Principal:
        Service: states.amazonaws.com
      Action: "sts:AssumeRole"
  Policies:
    - PolicyName: InvokeCallbackLambda
      PolicyDocument:
        Statement:
          - Effect: Allow
            Action:
              - "lambda:InvokeFunction"
            Resource:
              - !Sub "$${LambdaHumanApprovalSendEmailFunction.Arn}"

LambdaSendEmailExecutionRole:
Using a Map State to Call Lambda Multiple Times

In this tutorial, you will learn how to use a Map state to call an AWS Lambda function multiple times, based on the state machine input.

The Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20) tutorial walks you through creating a state machine that calls a Lambda function. If you have completed that tutorial, skip to Step 4 (p. 81) and use the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role and Lambda function that you previously created.

Topics

- Step 1: Create an IAM Role for Lambda (p. 79)
- Step 2: Create a Lambda Function (p. 80)
- Step 3: Test the Lambda Function (p. 81)
- Step 4: Create a State Machine (p. 81)
- Step 5: Start a New Execution (p. 82)

Step 1: Create an IAM Role for Lambda

Both AWS Lambda and AWS Step Functions can execute code and access AWS resources (for example, data stored in Amazon S3 buckets). To maintain security, you must grant Lambda and Step Functions access to these resources.
Lambda requires you to assign an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role when you create a Lambda function, in the same way Step Functions requires you to assign an IAM role when you create a state machine.

You use the IAM console to create a service-linked role.

**To create a role (console)**

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the IAM console at https://console.aws.amazon.com/iam/.
2. In the navigation pane of the IAM console, choose Roles. Then choose Create role.
3. Choose the AWS Service role type, and then choose Lambda.
4. Choose the Lambda use case. Use cases are defined by the service to include the trust policy required by the service. Then choose Next: Permissions.
5. Choose one or more permissions policies to attach to the role (for example, AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole). See AWS Lambda Permissions Model.
   
   Select the box next to the policy that assigns the permissions that you want the role to have, and then choose Next: Review.
6. Enter a Role name.
7. (Optional) For Role description, edit the description for the new service-linked role.
8. Review the role, and then choose Create role.

**Step 2: Create a Lambda Function**

Your Lambda function receives input (a name) and returns a greeting that includes the input value.

**Important**

Ensure that your Lambda function is under the same AWS account and AWS Region as your state machine.

1. Open the Lambda console and choose Create a function.
2. In the Blueprints section, choose Author from scratch.
3. In the Basic information section, configure your Lambda function:
   a. For Function name, enter HelloFunction.
   b. For Runtime, choose Node.js 12.x.
   c. For Role, select Choose an existing role.
   d. For Existing role, select the Lambda role that you created earlier (p. 80).
   
   **Note**
   
   If the IAM role that you created doesn't appear in the list, the role might still need a few minutes to propagate to Lambda.
   e. Choose Create function.

   When your Lambda function is created, note its Amazon Resource Name (ARN) in the upper-right corner of the page. For example:

   ```
   arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:123456789012:function:HelloFunction
   ```

4. Copy the following code for the Lambda function into the Function code section of the HelloFunction page.

   ```
   exports.handler = (event, context, callback) => {
   ```
Step 3: Test the Lambda Function

Test your Lambda function to see it in operation.

1. For **Select a test event**, choose **Configure test event**. For **Event name**, enter **HelloFunction**.
2. Replace the example data with the following.

```json
{
    "who": "AWS Step Functions"
}
```

The "who" entry corresponds to the `event.who` field in your Lambda function, completing the greeting. You will use the same input data when running the function as a Step Functions task.

3. Choose **Create**.
4. On the **HelloFunction** page, test your Lambda function using the new data.

The results of the test are displayed at the top of the page. Expand **Details** to see the output.

Step 4: Create a State Machine

Use the Step Functions console to create a state machine with a **Map** state. Add a **Task** state with a reference to your Lambda. The Lambda function is invoked for each iteration of the **Map** state, based on the state machine input.

1. Open the **Step Functions console** and choose **Create a state machine**.
2. On the **Define state machine** page, choose **Author with code snippets**. For **Type**, choose **Standard**.

   Enter a **Name**, for example, **MapLambda**.

   **Note**
   State machine, execution, and activity names must be 1–80 characters in length, must be unique for your account and AWS Region, and must not contain any of the following:

   - Whitespace
   - Wildcard characters (\* ?)
   - Bracket characters (\[ \] { }< >)
   - Special characters (\^ \$ \| ~ \- \# \& \)
   - Control characters (\u0000 - \u001f or \u007f - \u009f).

   Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

3. In the **State machine definition** pane, add the following state machine definition using the ARN of the Lambda function that you created earlier (p. 80), as shown in the following example.
Step 5: Start a New Execution

After you create your state machine, you start an execution.


   The New execution page is displayed.
2. (Optional) To help identify your execution, you can specify an ID for it in the **Enter an execution name** box. If you don't enter an ID, Step Functions generates a unique ID automatically.

**Note**
Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

3. In the execution input area, replace the example data with the following.

```json
[
  {
    "who": "bob"
  },
  {
    "who": "meg"
  },
  {
    "who": "joe"
  }
]
```

Your Map state will iterate and run the **CallLambda** task state for each of these items in the input. "who" is the key name that your Lambda function uses to get the name of the person to greet.

4. Choose **Start Execution**.

A new execution of your state machine starts, and a new page showing your running execution is displayed.

5. To view the results of your execution, expand the **Output** section under **Execution details**.

```json
["Hello, bob!",
 "Hello, meg!",
 "Hello, joe!"
]
```

The output for each of the Lambda function executions are combined into the output for the state machine.

For more information on using Map states, see the following:

- [Map](p. 114)
- [Map State Example](p. 115)
- [Map State Input and Output Processing](p. 117)
- [ItemsPath](p. 124)

**Create a Step Functions State Machine Using AWS SAM**

In this guide, you download, build, and deploy a sample AWS SAM application that contains an AWS Step Functions state machine. This application creates a mock stock trading workflow which runs on a pre-defined schedule (note that the schedule is disabled by default to avoid incurring charges).

The following diagram shows the components of this application:
The following is a preview of commands that you run to create your sample application. For more details about each of these commands, see the sections later in this page.

# Step 1 - Download a sample application. For this tutorial you will follow the prompts to select an AWS Quick Start Template called 'Step Functions Sample App (Stock Trader)'
```
sam init
```

# Step 2 - Build your application
```
cd project-directory
sam build
```

# Step 3 - Deploy your application
```
sam deploy --guided
```

## Prerequisites

This guide assumes that you've completed the steps in the *Installing the AWS SAM CLI* for your OS. It assumes that you've done the following:

1. Created an AWS account.
2. Configured IAM permissions.
3. Installed Homebrew. Note: Homebrew is only a prerequisite for Linux and macOS.
4. Installed the AWS SAM CLI. Note: Make sure you have version 0.52.0 or later. You can check which version you have by executing the command `sam --version`.
Step 1: Download a Sample AWS SAM Application

Command to run:

```
rm init
```

Follow the on-screen prompts to select the following:

1. **Template:** AWS Quick Start Templates
2. **Language:** Python, Ruby, NodeJS, Go, Java, or .NET
3. **Project name:** (name of your choice - default is `sam-app`)
4. **Quick start application:** Step Functions Sample App (Stock Trader)

**What AWS SAM is doing:**

This command creates a directory with the name you provided for the 'Project name' prompt (default is `sam-app`). The specific contents of the directory will depend on the language you choose.

Following are the directory contents when you choose one of the Python runtimes:

```plaintext
### README.md
### functions
#   ### __init__.py
#   ### stock_buyer
#   #   ### __init__.py
#   #   ### app.py
#   #   ### requirements.txt
#   ### stock_checker
#   #   ### __init__.py
#   #   ### app.py
#   #   ### requirements.txt
#   ### stock_seller
#       ### __init__.py
#       ### app.py
#       ### requirements.txt
### statemachine
#   ### stock_trader.asl.json
### template.yaml
### tests
    ### unit
    ### __init__.py
    ### test_buyer.py
    ### test_checker.py
    ### test_seller.py
```

There are two especially interesting files that you can take a look at:

- `template.yaml`: Contains the AWS SAM template that defines your application's AWS resources.
- `statemachine/stockTrader.asl.json`: Contains the application's state machine definition, which is written in Amazon States Language (p. 92).

You can see the following entry in the `template.yaml` file, which points to the state machine definition file:

```
Properties:
    DefinitionUri: statemachine/stock_trader.asl.json
```
Step 2: Build Your Application

Command to run:

First change into the project directory (that is, the directory where the template.yaml file for the sample application is located; by default is sam-app), then run this command:

```
sam build
```

Example output:

```
Build Succeeded
Built Artifacts : .aws-sam/build
Built Template   : .aws-sam/build/template.yaml

Commands you can use next
================================
[*] Invoke Function: sam local invoke
[*] Deploy: sam deploy --guided
```

What AWS SAM is doing:

The AWS SAM CLI comes with abstractions for a number of Lambda runtimes to build your dependencies, and copies all build artifacts into staging folders so that everything is ready to be packaged and deployed. The `sam build` command builds any dependencies that your application has, and copies the build artifacts to folders under `./aws-sam/build`.

Step 3: Deploy Your Application to the AWS Cloud

Command to run:

```
sam deploy --guided
```

Follow the on-screen prompts. You can just respond with `Enter` to accept the default options provided in the interactive experience.

What AWS SAM is doing:

This command deploys your application to the AWS cloud. It takes the deployment artifacts you build with the `sam build` command, packages and uploads them to an Amazon S3 bucket created by AWS SAM CLI, and deploys the application using AWS CloudFormation. In the output of the deploy command you can see the changes being made to your AWS CloudFormation stack.

You can verify the example Step Functions state machine was successfully deployed by following these steps:

2. In the left navigation, choose `State machines`.
3. Find and choose your new state machine in the list. It will be named `StockTradingStateMachine-<unique-hash>`.
4. Choose the `Definition` tab.
You should now see a visual representation of your state machine. You can verify that the visual representation matches the state machine definition found in the `statemachine/stockTrader.asl.json` file of your project directory.

**Troubleshooting**

**SAM CLI error: "no such option: --guided"**

When executing `sam deploy`, you see the following error:

```
Error: no such option: --guided
```

This means that you are using an older version of the AWS SAM CLI that does not support the `--guided` parameter. To fix this, you can either update your version of AWS SAM CLI to 0.33.0 or later, or omit the `--guided` parameter from the `sam deploy` command.

**SAM CLI error: "Failed to create managed resources: Unable to locate credentials"**

When executing `sam deploy`, you see the following error:

```
Error: Failed to create managed resources: Unable to locate credentials
```

This means that you have not set up AWS credentials to enable the AWS SAM CLI to make AWS service calls. To fix this, you must set up AWS credentials. For more information, see Setting Up AWS Credentials in the AWS Serverless Application Model Developer Guide.

**Clean Up**

If you no longer need the AWS resources you created by running this tutorial, you can remove them by deleting the AWS CloudFormation stack that you deployed.

To delete the AWS CloudFormation stack created with this tutorial using the AWS Management Console, follow these steps:

2. In the left navigation pane, choose Stacks.
3. In the list of stacks, choose `sam-app` (or the name of stack you created).
4. Choose Delete.

When done, the status of the of the stack will change to DELETE_COMPLETE.

Alternatively, you can delete the AWS CloudFormation stack by executing the following AWS CLI command:

```
aws cloudformation delete-stack --stack-name sam-app --region region
```
Verify Deleted Stack

For both methods of deleting the AWS CloudFormation stack, you can verify it was deleted by going to the https://console.aws.amazon.com/cloudformation, choosing Stacks in the left navigation pane, and choosing Deleted in the dropdown to the right of the search text box. You should see your stack name sam-app (or the name of the stack you created) in the list of deleted stacks.
How Step Functions Works

This section describes important concepts to help you get familiar with AWS Step Functions and understand how it works.

**Topics**
- Standard vs. Express Workflows (p. 89)
- States (p. 90)
- Transitions (p. 117)
- State Machine Data (p. 118)
- Input and Output Processing in Step Functions (p. 120)
- Executions in Step Functions (p. 136)
- Error Handling in Step Functions (p. 137)
- Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144)
- Read Consistency in Step Functions (p. 181)
- Templates in Step Functions (p. 181)
- Tagging in Step Functions (p. 181)
- AWS Step Functions Data Science SDK for Python (p. 183)
- AWS Step Functions and AWS SAM (p. 184)

**Standard vs. Express Workflows**

When you create a state machine, you must select a Type of either **Standard** or **Express**. In both cases, you define your state machine using the Amazon States Language. Your state machine executions will behave differently, depending on which Type you select. The Type you choose cannot be changed after your state machine has been created.

Standard Workflows are ideal for long-running, durable, and auditable workflows. They can run for up to a year and you can retrieve the full execution history using the Step Functions API, up to 90 days after your execution completes. Standard Workflows employ an at-most-once model, where your tasks and states are never executed more than once unless you have specified Retry behavior in ASL. This makes them suited to orchestrating non-idempotent actions, such as starting an Amazon EMR cluster or processing payments. Standard Workflows executions are billed according to the number of state transitions processed.

Express Workflows are ideal for high-volume, event-processing workloads such as IoT data ingestion, streaming data processing and transformation, and mobile application backends. They can run for up to five minutes. Express Workflows employ an at-least-once model, where there is a possibility that an execution might be run more than once. This makes them ideal for orchestrating idempotent actions such as transforming input data and storing via PUT in Amazon DynamoDB. Express Workflow executions are billed by the number of executions, the duration of execution, and the memory consumed.

Standard and Express Workflows can automatically start in response to events such as HTTP requests via Amazon API Gateway (fully-managed APIs at scale), IoT Rules and over 140 event sources in Amazon EventBridge.

**Standard vs Express Workflows**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Standard Workflows</th>
<th>Express Workflows</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum duration</td>
<td>1 year.</td>
<td>5 minutes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### At-Least-Once Workflow Execution

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard Workflows</th>
<th>Express Workflows</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Supported execution start rate (p. 243)</strong></td>
<td>Over 2,000 per second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Supported state transition rate (p. 243)</strong></td>
<td>Over 4,000 per second per account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pricing</strong></td>
<td>Priced per state transition. A state transition is counted each time a step in your execution is completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Execution history</strong></td>
<td>Executions can be listed and described with Step Functions APIs, and visually debugged through the console. They can also be inspected in CloudWatch Logs by enabling logging on your state machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Execution semantics (p. 90)</strong></td>
<td>Exactly-once workflow execution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Service integrations (p. 144)</strong></td>
<td>Supports all service integrations and patterns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Step Functions activities</strong></td>
<td>Supports Step Functions activities.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### At-Least-Once Workflow Execution

Standard Workflows have exactly-once workflow execution. Express Workflows have at-least-once workflow execution.

With Standard Workflows, the execution state is internally persisted on every state transition. Each execution will be run exactly once. If you attempt to start a Standard Workflow with the same name more than once, only one execution will start. Standard Workflows always run from beginning to end.

Unlike Standard Workflows, Express Workflows have no internally persisted state for executions progress. There is no way to guarantee that one execution will run only once. If you attempt to start an Express Workflow with the same name more than once, each attempt causes an execution to start concurrently, and each runs at least once. In rare cases, internal execution state can be lost and such execution will be automatically restarted from beginning. When using Express Workflows, make sure your state machine logic is idempotent and should not be affected adversely by multiple concurrent executions of the same input.

### States

Individual states can make decisions based on their input, perform actions, and pass output to other states. In AWS Step Functions you define your workflows in the Amazon States Language. The Step Functions console provides a graphical representation of that state machine to help visualize your application logic.
States are elements in your state machine. A state is referred to by its name, which can be any string, but which must be unique within the scope of the entire state machine.

States can perform a variety of functions in your state machine:

- Do some work in your state machine (a Task (p. 95) state)
- Make a choice between branches of execution (a Choice (p. 106) state)
- Stop an execution with a failure or success (a Fail (p. 111) or Succeed (p. 111) state)
- Simply pass its input to its output or inject some fixed data (a Pass (p. 94) state)
- Provide a delay for a certain amount of time or until a specified time/date (a Wait (p. 109) state)
- Begin parallel branches of execution (a Parallel (p. 111) state)
- Dynamically iterate steps (a Map (p. 114) state)

The following is an example state named HelloWorld that performs an AWS Lambda function.

```
"HelloWorld": {
  "Type": "Task",
  "Next": "AfterHelloWorldState",
  "Comment": "Run the HelloWorld Lambda function"
}
```

States share many common features:

- Each state must have a Type field indicating what type of state it is.
- Each state can have an optional Comment field to hold a human-readable comment about, or description of, the state.
- Each state (except a Succeed or Fail state) requires a Next field or, alternatively, can become a terminal state by specifying an End field.

**Note**

A Choice state may have more than one Next, but only one within each Choice Rule. A Choice state cannot use End.

Certain state types require additional fields, or may redefine common field usage.

After you have created and executed Standard Workflows, you can access information about each state, its input and output, when it was active and for how long, by viewing the Execution Details page in the Step Functions console.

After you have created and executed Express Workflows, and if logging is enabled, you can access information about the execution in Amazon CloudWatch Logs (p. 300).

**Topics**

- Amazon States Language (p. 92)
- Pass (p. 94)
- Task (p. 95)
- Choice (p. 106)
- Wait (p. 109)
- Succeed (p. 111)
- Fail (p. 111)
- Parallel (p. 111)
Amazon States Language

The Amazon States Language is a JSON-based, structured language used to define your state machine, a collection of states (p. 90), that can do work (Task states), determine which states to transition to next (Choice states), stop an execution with an error (Fail states), and so on.

For more information, see the Amazon States Language Specification and Statelint, a tool that validates Amazon States Language code.

To create a state machine on the Step Functions console using Amazon States Language, see Getting Started (p. 13).

Example Amazon States Language Specification

```json
{
  "Comment": "An example of the Amazon States Language using a choice state.",
  "StartAt": "FirstState",
  "States": {
    "FirstState": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "Next": "ChoiceState"
    },
    "ChoiceState": {
      "Type": "Choice",
      "Choices": [
        {
          "Variable": "$.foo",
          "NumericEquals": 1,
          "Next": "FirstMatchState"
        },
        {
          "Variable": "$.foo",
          "NumericEquals": 2,
          "Next": "SecondMatchState"
        }
      ],
      "Default": "DefaultState"
    },
    "FirstMatchState": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "Next": "NextState"
    },
    "SecondMatchState": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "Next": "NextState"
    },
    "DefaultState": {
      "Type": "Fail",
      "Error": "DefaultStateError",
      "Cause": "No Matches!"
    },
    "NextState": {
      ...
    }
  }
}
State Machine Structure

State machines are defined using JSON text that represents a structure containing the following fields.

Comment (Optional)

A human-readable description of the state machine.

StartAt (Required)

A string that must exactly match (is case sensitive) the name of one of the state objects.

TimeoutSeconds (Optional)

The maximum number of seconds an execution of the state machine can run. If it runs longer than the specified time, the execution fails with a States.Timeout Error Name (p. 138).

Version (Optional)

The version of the Amazon States Language used in the state machine (default is "1.0").

States (Required)

An object containing a comma-delimited set of states.

The States field contains States (p. 90).

```json
{
    "State1" : {
    
    },
    "State2" : {
    
    },
...
}
```

A state machine is defined by the states it contains and the relationships between them.

The following is an example.

```json
{
    "Comment": "A Hello World example of the Amazon States Language using a Pass state",
    "StartAt": "HelloWorld",
    "States": {
        "HelloWorld": {
            "Type": "Pass",
            "Result": "Hello World!",
            "End": true
        }
    }
}
```
When an execution of this state machine is launched, the system begins with the state referenced in the `StartAt` field ("HelloWorld"). If this state has an "End": true field, the execution stops and returns a result. Otherwise, the system looks for a "Next": field and continues with that state next. This process repeats until the system reaches a terminal state (a state with "Type": "Succeed", "Type": "Fail", or "End": true), or a runtime error occurs.

The following rules apply to states within a state machine:

- States can occur in any order within the enclosing block, but the order in which they're listed doesn't affect the order in which they're run. The contents of the states determines this order.
- Within a state machine, there can be only one state that's designated as the start state, designated by the value of the `StartAt` field in the top-level structure. This state is the one that is executed first when the execution starts.
- Any state for which the `End` field is true is considered an end (or terminal) state. Depending on your state machine logic—for example, if your state machine has multiple branches of execution—you might have more than one end state.
- If your state machine consists of only one state, it can be both the start state and the end state.

### Common State Fields

**Type (Required)**

The state's type.

**Next**

The name of the next state that is run when the current state finishes. Some state types, such as Choice, allow multiple transition states.

**End**

Designates this state as a terminal state (ends the execution) if set to true. There can be any number of terminal states per state machine. Only one of Next or End can be used in a state. Some state types, such as Choice, don't support or use the End field.

**Comment (Optional)**

Holds a human-readable description of the state.

**InputPath (Optional)**

A path (p. 120) that selects a portion of the state's input to be passed to the state's task for processing. If omitted, it has the value $ which designates the entire input. For more information, see Input and Output Processing (p. 120)).

**OutputPath (Optional)**

A path (p. 120) that selects a portion of the state's input to be passed to the state's output. If omitted, it has the value $ which designates the entire input. For more information, see Input and Output Processing (p. 120)).

### Pass

A Pass state ("Type": "Pass") passes its input to its output, without performing work. Pass states are useful when constructing and debugging state machines.

In addition to the common state fields (p. 94), Pass states allow the following fields.
**Result (Optional)**

Treated as the output of a virtual task to be passed to the next state, and filtered as specified by the `ResultPath` field (if present).

**ResultPath (Optional)**

Specifies where (in the input) to place the "output" of the virtual task specified in `Result`. The input is further filtered as specified by the `OutputPath` field (if present) before being used as the state's output. For more information, see Input and Output Processing (p. 120).

**Parameters (Optional)**

Create a collection of key-value pairs that will be passed as input. Values can be static, or selected from the input with a path. For more information, see InputPath and Parameters (p. 122).

---

**Pass State Example**

Here is an example of a `Pass` state that injects some fixed data into the state machine, probably for testing purposes.

```json
"No-op": {
  "Type": "Pass",
  "Result": {
    "x-datum": 0.381018,
    "y-datum": 622.2269926397355
  },
  "ResultPath": "$.coords",
  "Next": "End"
}
```

Suppose the input to this state is the following.

```json
{
  "georefOf": "Home"
}
```

Then the output would be this.

```json
{
  "georefOf": "Home",
  "coords": {
    "x-datum": 0.381018,
    "y-datum": 622.2269926397355
  }
}
```

---

**Task**

A Task state ("Type": "Task") represents a single unit of work performed by a state machine.

All work in your state machine is done by tasks. A task performs work by using an activity or an AWS Lambda function, or by passing parameters to the API actions of other services.

AWS Step Functions can invoke Lambda functions directly from a task state. A Lambda function is a cloud-native task that runs on AWS Lambda. You can write Lambda functions in a variety of programming languages, using the AWS Management Console or by uploading code to Lambda. For more information see ??? (p. 20).
Note
Step Functions can coordinate some AWS services directly from a task state. For more information see Service Integrations (p. 144).

An activity consists of program code that waits for an operator to perform an action or to provide input. You can host activities on Amazon EC2, on Amazon ECS, or even on mobile devices. Activities poll Step Functions using the GetActivityTask and SendTaskSuccess, SendTaskFailure, and SendTaskHeartbeat API actions.

The Amazon States Language represents tasks by setting a state's type to Task and by providing the task with the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the activity or Lambda function.

In addition to the common state fields (p. 94), Task states have the following fields.

Resource (Required)
A URI, especially an ARN that uniquely identifies the specific task to execute.

Parameters (Optional)
Used to pass information to the API actions of connected resources. The parameters can use a mix of static JSON and JsonPath. For more information, see Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150).

ResultPath (Optional)
Specifies where (in the input) to place the results of executing the task that's specified in Resource. The input is then filtered as specified by the OutputPath field (if present) before being used as the state's output. For more information, see path (p. 120).

Retry (Optional)
An array of objects, called Retriers, that define a retry policy if the state encounters runtime errors. For more information, see Examples Using Retry and Using Catch (p. 141).

Catch (Optional)
An array of objects, called Catchers, that define a fallback state. This state is executed if the state encounters runtime errors and its retry policy is exhausted or isn't defined. For more information, see Fallback States (p. 140).

TimeoutSeconds (Optional)
If the task runs longer than the specified seconds, this state fails with a States.Timeout error name. Must be a positive, non-zero integer. If not provided, the default value is 99999999. The count begins after the task has been started, for example, when ActivityStarted or LambdaFunctionStarted are logged in the Execution event history.

HeartbeatSeconds (Optional)
If more time than the specified seconds elapses between heartbeats from the task, this state fails with a States.Timeout error name. Must be a positive, non-zero integer less than the number of seconds specified in the TimeoutSeconds field. If not provided, the default value is 99999999. For Activities, the count begins when GetActivityTask receives a token and ActivityStarted is logged in the Execution event history.

A Task state must set either the End field to true if the state ends the execution, or must provide a state in the Next field that is run when the Task state is complete.

Task State Example

In this example, ActivityState will schedule the HelloWorld activity for execution in the us-east-1 AWS Region on the caller's AWS account. When HelloWorld completes, the next state (here called NextState) will be run.
If this task fails to complete within 300 seconds, or doesn't send heartbeat notifications in intervals of 60 seconds, the task is marked as failed. It's a good practice to set a timeout value and a heartbeat interval for long-running activities.

```
"ActivityState": {
  "Type": "Task",
  "TimeoutSeconds": 300,
  "HeartbeatSeconds": 60,
  "Next": "NextState"
}
```

**Specifying Resource ARNs in Tasks**

The `Resource` field's ARN is specified using the following pattern.

```
arn:partition:service:region:account:task_type:name
```

In this pattern:

- **partition** is the AWS Step Functions partition to use, most commonly `aws`.
- **service** indicates the AWS service used to execute the task, and is:
  - `states` for an activity (p. 97).
  - `lambda` for a Lambda function (p. 98).
- **region** is the AWS Region in which the Step Functions activity or state machine type or Lambda function has been created.
- **account** is your AWS account ID.
- **task_type** is the type of task to run. It is one of the following values:
  - **activity** – An activity (p. 97).
  - **function** – A Lambda function (p. 98).
  - **servicename** – The name of a supported connected service (see Supported AWS Service Integrations for Step Functions (p. 153)).
- **name** is the registered resource name (activity name, Lambda function name, or service API action).

**Note**

Step Functions doesn't support referencing ARNs across partitions, regions, or accounts (for example, "aws-cn" can't invoke tasks in the "aws" partition, and vice versa).

**Task Types**

The following task types are supported:

- **Activity** (p. 97)
- **Lambda functions** (p. 98)
- **A supported AWS service** (p. 144)

The following sections provide more detail about each task type.

**Activity**

Activities represent workers (processes or threads), implemented and hosted by you, that perform a specific task. They are supported only by Standard Workflows, not Express Workflows.
Activity resource ARNs use the following syntax.

```
arn:partition:states:region:account:activity:name
```

For more information about these fields, see Specifying Resource ARNs in Tasks (p. 97).

**Note**

You must create activities with Step Functions (using a CreateActivity API action, or the Step Functions console) before their first use.

For more information about creating an activity and implementing workers, see Activities (p. 99).

**Lambda Functions**

Lambda tasks execute a function using AWS Lambda. To specify a Lambda function, use the ARN of the Lambda function in the Resource field.

Lambda function Resource ARNs use the following syntax.

```
arn:partition:lambda:region:account:function:function_name
```

For more information about these fields, see Specifying Resource ARNs in Tasks (p. 97).

For example:

```
"LambdaState": {
  "Type": "Task",
  "Next": "NextState"
}
```

After the Lambda function specified in the Resource field completes, its output is sent to the state identified in the Next field ("NextState").

**A Supported AWS Service**

When you reference a connected resource, Step Functions directly calls the API actions of a supported service. Specify the service and action in the Resource field.

Connected service Resource ARNs use the following syntax.

```
arn:partition:states:region:account:servicename:APIname
```

**Note**

To create a synchronous connection to a connected resource, append `.sync` to the APIname entry in the ARN. For more information, see Service Integrations (p. 144).

For example:

```
{
  "StartAt": "BATCH_JOB",
  "States": {
    "BATCH_JOB": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::batch:submitJob.sync",
      "Parameters": {
```

---

98
Activities

Activities are an AWS Step Functions feature that enables you to have a task in your state machine where the work is performed by a worker that can be hosted on Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2), Amazon Elastic Container Service (Amazon ECS), mobile devices—basically anywhere.

Overview

In AWS Step Functions, activities are a way to associate code running somewhere (known as an activity worker) with a specific task in a state machine. You can create an activity using the Step Functions console, or by calling `CreateActivity`. This provides an Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for your task state. Use this ARN to poll the task state for work in your activity worker.

**Note**
Activities are not versioned and are expected to be backward compatible. If you must make a backward-incompatible change to an activity, create a new activity in Step Functions using a unique name.

An activity worker can be an application running on an Amazon EC2 instance, an AWS Lambda function, a mobile device: any application that can make an HTTP connection, hosted anywhere. When Step Functions reaches an activity task state, the workflow waits for an activity worker to poll for a task. An activity worker polls Step Functions by using `GetActivityTask`, and sending the ARN for the related activity. `GetActivityTask` returns a response including input (a string of JSON input for the task) and a `taskToken` (a unique identifier for the task). After the activity worker completes its work, it can provide a report of its success or failure by using `SendTaskSuccess` or `SendTaskFailure`. These two calls use the `taskToken` provided by `GetActivityTask` to associate the result with that task.

**APIs Related to Activity Tasks**

Step Functions provides APIs for creating and listing activities, requesting a task, and for managing the flow of your state machine based on the results of your worker.

The following are the Step Functions APIs that are related to activities:

- `CreateActivity`
- `GetActivityTask`
- `ListActivities`
- `SendTaskFailure`
- `SendTaskHeartbeat`
- `SendTaskSuccess`

**Note**
Polling for activity tasks with `GetActivityTask` can cause latency in some implementations. See [Avoid Latency When Polling for Activity Tasks](p. 242).
Waiting for an Activity Task to Complete

Configure how long a state waits by setting TimeoutSeconds in the task definition. To keep the task active and waiting, periodically send a heartbeat from your activity worker using SendTaskHeartbeat within the time configured in TimeoutSeconds. By configuring a long timeout duration and actively sending a heartbeat, an activity in Step Functions can wait up to a year for an execution to complete.

For example, if you need a workflow that waits for the outcome of a long process, do the following:

1. Create an activity by using the console, or by using CreateActivity. Make a note of the activity ARN.
2. Reference that ARN in an activity task state in your state machine definition and set TimeoutSeconds.
3. Implement an activity worker that polls for work by using GetActivityTask, referencing that activity ARN.
4. Use SendTaskHeartbeat periodically within the time you set in HeartbeatSeconds (p. 95) in your state machine task definition to keep the task from timing out.
5. Start an execution of your state machine.
6. Start your activity worker process.

The execution pauses at the activity task state and waits for your activity worker to poll for a task. Once a taskToken is provided to your activity worker, your workflow will wait for SendTaskSuccess or SendTaskFailure to provide a status. If the execution doesn't receive either of these or a SendTaskHeartbeat call before the time configured in TimeoutSeconds, the execution will fail and the execution history will contain an ExecutionTimedOut event.

Next Steps

For a more detailed look at creating state machines that use an activity workers, see:

- Creating an Activity State Machine Using Step Functions (p. 32)
- Example Activity Worker in Ruby (p. 100)

Example Activity Worker in Ruby

The following is an example activity worker that uses the AWS SDK for Ruby to show you how to use best practices and implement your own activity worker.

The code implements a consumer-producer pattern with a configurable number of threads for pollers and activity workers. The poller threads are constantly long polling the activity task. Once an activity task is retrieved, it's passed through a bounded blocking queue for the activity thread to pick it up.

- For more information about the AWS SDK for Ruby, see the AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference.
- To download this code and related resources, see the step-functions-ruby-activity-worker repository on GitHub.

The following Ruby code is the main entry point for this example Ruby activity worker.

```ruby
require_relative './lib/step_functions/activity'

credentials = Aws::SharedCredentials.new
region = 'us-west-2'
activity_arn = 'ACTIVITYARN'
```
activity = StepFunctions::Activity.new(
  credentials: credentials,
  region: region,
  activity_arn: activity_arn,
  workers_count: 1,
  pollers_count: 1,
  heartbeat_delay: 30
)

# The start method takes as argument the block that is the actual logic of your custom activity.
activity.start do |input|
  { result: :SUCCESS, echo: input['value'] }
end

The code includes defaults you can change to reference your activity, and to adapt it to your specific implementation. This code takes as input the actual implementation logic, allows you to reference your specific activity and credentials, and enables you to configure the number of threads and heartbeat delay. For more information and to download the code, see Step Functions Ruby Activity Worker.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>require_relative</td>
<td>Relative path to the following example activity worker code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>region</td>
<td>AWS Region of your activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>workers_count</td>
<td>The number of threads for your activity worker. For most implementations, between 10 and 20 threads should be sufficient. The longer the activity takes to process, the more threads it might need. As an estimate, multiply the number of process activities per second by the 99th percentile activity processing latency, in seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pollers_count</td>
<td>The number of threads for your pollers. Between 10 and 20 threads should be sufficient for most implementations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heartbeat_delay</td>
<td>The delay in seconds between heartbeats.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>input</td>
<td>Implementation logic of your activity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following is the Ruby activity worker, referenced with ../lib/step_functions/activity in your code.

```ruby
require 'set'
require 'json'
require 'thread'
require 'logger'
require 'aws-sdk'

module Validate
  def self.positive(value)
    raise ArgumentError, 'Argument has to be positive' if value <= 0
    value
  end

  def self.required(value)
    raise ArgumentError, 'Argument has to be required' if value.nil?
    value
  end
end
```
raise ArgumentError, 'Argument is required' if value.nil?
value
end
end

module StepFunctions
  class RetryError < StandardError
    def initialize(message)
      super(message)
    end
  end
  def self.with_retries(options = {}, &block)
    retries = 0
    base_delay_seconds = options[:base_delay_seconds] || 2
    max_retries = options[:max_retries] || 3
    begin
      block.call
      rescue => e
        puts e
        if retries < max_retries
          retries += 1
          sleep base_delay_seconds**retries
          retry
        end
        raise RetryError, 'All retries of operation had failed'
      end
    end
  end
  class Activity
    def initialize(options = {})
      @states = Aws::States::Client.new(
        credentials: Validate.required(options[:credentials]),
        region: Validate.required(options[:region]),
        http_read_timeout: Validate.positive(options[:http_read_timeout] || 60)
      )
      @activity_arn = Validate.required(options[:activity_arn])
      @heartbeat_delay = Validate.positive(options[:heartbeat_delay] || 60)
      @queue_max = Validate.positive(options[:queue_max] || 5)
      @pollers_count = Validate.positive(options[:pollers_count] || 1)
      @workers_count = Validate.positive(options[:workers_count] || 1)
      @max_retry = Validate.positive(options[:workers_count] || 3)
      @logger = Logger.new(STDOUT)
    end
    def start(&block)
      @sink = SizedQueue.new(@queue_max)
      @activities = Set.new
      start_heartbeat_worker(@activities)
      start_workers(@activities, block, @sink)
      start_pollers(@activities, @sink)
      wait
    end
    def queue_size
      return 0 if @sink.nil?
      @sink.size
    end
    def activities_count
      return 0 if @activities.nil?
      @activities.size
    end
    private
  end
end
def start_pollers(activities, sink)
    @pollers = Array.new(@pollers_count) do
        PollerWorker.new(
            states: @states,
            activity_arn: @activity_arn,
            sink: sink,
            activities: activities,
            max_retry: @max_retry
        )
    end
    @pollers.each(&:start)
end

def start_workers(activities, block, sink)
    @workers = Array.new(@workers_count) do
        ActivityWorker.new(
            states: @states,
            block: block,
            sink: sink,
            activities: activities,
            max_retry: @max_retry
        )
    end
    @workers.each(&:start)
end

def start_heartbeat_worker(activities)
    @heartbeat_worker = HeartbeatWorker.new(
        states: @states,
        activities: activities,
        heartbeat_delay: @heartbeat_delay,
        max_retry: @max_retry
    )
    @heartbeat_worker.start
end

def wait
    sleep
    rescue Interrupt
        shutdown
    ensure
        Thread.current.exit
    end

def shutdown
    stop_workers(@pollers)
    wait_workers(@pollers)
    wait_activities_drained
    stop_workers(@workers)
    wait_activities_completed
    shutdown_workers(@workers)
    shutdown_worker(@heartbeat_worker)
end

def shutdown_workers(workers)
    workers.each do |worker|
        shutdown_worker(worker)
    end
end

def shutdown_worker(worker)
    worker.kill
end

def wait_workers(workers)
    workers.each(&:wait)
end
def wait_activities_drained
    wait_condition { @sink.empty? }
end

def wait_activities_completed
    wait_condition { @activities.empty? }
end

def wait_condition(&block)
    loop do
        break if block.call
        sleep(1)
    end
end

def stop_workers(workers)
    workers.each(&:stop)
end

class Worker
    def initialize
        @logger = Logger.new(STDOUT)
        @running = false
    end

    def run
        raise 'Method run hasn\'t been implemented'
    end

    def process
        loop do
            begin
                break unless @running
                run
                rescue => e
                    puts e
                    @logger.error('Unexpected error has occurred')
                    @logger.error(e)
            end
        end
    end

    def start
        return unless @thread.nil?
        @running = true
        @thread = Thread.new do
            process
        end
    end

    def stop
        @running = false
    end

    def kill
        return if @thread.nil?
        @thread.kill
        @thread = nil
    end

    def wait
        @thread.join
    end
end
class PollerWorker < Worker
  def initialize(options = {})
    @states = options[:states]
    @activity_arn = options[:activity_arn]
    @sink = options[:sink]
    @activities = options[:activities]
    @max_retry = options[:max_retry]
    @logger = Logger.new(STDOUT)
  end

  def run
    activity_task = StepFunctions.with_retries(max_retry: @max_retry) do
      begin
        @states.get_activity_task(activity_arn: @activity_arn)
      rescue => e
        @logger.error('Failed to retrieve activity task')
        @logger.error(e)
      end
    end
    return if activity_task.nil? || activity_task.task_token.nil?
    @activities.add(activity_task.task_token)
    @sink.push(activity_task)
  end
end

class ActivityWorker < Worker
  def initialize(options = {})
    @states = options[:states]
    @block = options[:block]
    @sink = options[:sink]
    @activities = options[:activities]
    @max_retry = options[:max_retry]
    @logger = Logger.new(STDOUT)
  end

  def run
    activity_task = @sink.pop
    result = @block.call(JSON.parse(activity_task.input))
    send_task_success(activity_task, result)
    rescue => e
      send_task_failure(activity_task, e)
    ensure
      @activities.delete(activity_task.task_token) unless activity_task.nil?
  end

  def send_task_success(activity_task, result)
    StepFunctions.with_retries(max_retry: @max_retry) do
      begin
        @states.send_task_success(
          task_token: activity_task.task_token,
          output: JSON.dump(result)
        )
      rescue => e
        @logger.error('Failed to send task success')
        @logger.error(e)
      end
    end
  end

  def send_task_failure(activity_task, error)
    StepFunctions.with_retries do
      begin
        @states.send_task_failure(
          task_token: activity_task.task_token,
          cause: error.message
        )
      rescue => e
        @logger.error('Failed to send task failure')
        @logger.error(e)
      end
    end
  end
end
Choice

A Choice state ("Type": "Choice") adds branching logic to a state machine.

In addition to the common state fields (p. 94), Choice states introduce the following additional fields.

**Choices (Required)**

An array of Choice Rules (p. 108) that determines which state the state machine transitions to next.

**Default (Optional, Recommended)**

The name of the state to transition to if none of the transitions in Choices is taken.

**Important**

Choice states don’t support the End field. In addition, they use Next only inside their Choices field.
Choice State Example

The following is an example of a Choice state and other states that it transitions to.

Note:
You must specify the $.type field. If the state input doesn't contain the $.type field, the execution fails and an error is displayed in the execution history.

```
"ChoiceStateX": {
  "Type": "Choice",
  "Choices": [
    {
      "Not": {
        "Variable": "$.type",
        "StringEquals": "Private"
      },
      "Next": "Public"
    },
    {
      "Variable": "$.value",
      "NumericEquals": 0,
      "Next": "ValueIsZero"
    },
    {
      "And": [
        {
          "Variable": "$.value",
          "NumericGreaterThanEquals": 20
        },
        {
          "Variable": "$.value",
          "NumericLessThan": 30
        }
      ],
      "Next": "ValueInTwenties"
    }
  ],
  "Default": "DefaultState"
},

"Public": {
  "Type": "Task",
  "Next": "NextState"
},

"ValueIsZero": {
  "Type": "Task",
  "Next": "NextState"
},

"ValueInTwenties": {
  "Type": "Task",
  "Next": "NextState"
},

"DefaultState": {
  "Type": "Fail",
  "Cause": "No Matches!"
}
```

In this example, the state machine starts with the following input value.

```
107
```
Step Functions transitions to the ValueInTwenties state, based on the value field.

If there are no matches for the Choice state's Choices, the state provided in the Default field runs instead. If the Default state isn't specified, the execution fails with an error.

**Choice Rules**

A Choice state must have a Choices field whose value is a non-empty array, and whose every element is an object called a Choice Rule. A Choice Rule contains the following:

- A **comparison** – Two fields that specify an input variable to compare, the type of comparison, and the value to compare the variable to.
- A **Next field** – The value of this field must match a state name in the state machine.

The following example checks whether the numerical value is equal to 1.

```json
{
    "Variable": "$.foo",
    "NumericEquals": 1,
    "Next": "FirstMatchState"
}
```

The following example checks whether the string is equal to MyString.

```json
{
    "Variable": "$.foo",
    "StringEquals": "MyString",
    "Next": "FirstMatchState"
}
```

The following example checks whether the string is greater than MyStringABC.

```json
{
    "Variable": "$.foo",
    "StringGreaterThan": "MyStringABC",
    "Next": "FirstMatchState"
}
```

The following example checks whether the timestamp is equal to 2001-01-01T12:00:00Z.

```json
{
    "Variable": "$.foo",
    "TimestampEquals": "2001-01-01T12:00:00Z",
    "Next": "FirstMatchState"
}
```

Step Functions examines each of the Choice Rules in the order listed in the Choices field. Then it transitions to the state specified in the Next field of the first Choice Rule in which the variable matches the value according to the comparison operator.
The following comparison operators are supported:

- And
- BooleanEquals
- Not
- NumericEquals
- NumericGreaterThan
- NumericGreaterThanOrEquals
- NumericLessThan
- NumericLessThanOrEquals
- Or
- StringEquals
- StringGreaterThan
- StringGreaterThanOrEquals
- StringLessThan
- StringLessThanOrEquals
- TimestampEquals
- TimestampGreaterThan
- TimestampGreaterThanOrEquals
- TimestampLessThan
- TimestampLessThanOrEquals

For each of these operators, the corresponding value must be of the appropriate type: string, number, Boolean, or timestamp. Step Functions doesn't attempt to match a numeric field to a string value. However, because timestamp fields are logically strings, it's possible that a field considered to be a timestamp can be matched by a StringEquals comparator.

**Note**
For interoperability, don't assume that numeric comparisons work with values outside the magnitude or precision that the IEEE 754-2008 binary64 data type represents. In particular, integers outside of the range $[-2^{53} + 1, 2^{53} - 1]$ might fail to compare in the expected way. Timestamps (for example, 2016-08-18T17:33:00Z) must conform to RFC3339 profile ISO 8601, with further restrictions:

- An uppercase T must separate the date and time portions.
- An uppercase Z must denote that a numeric time zone offset isn't present.

To understand the behavior of string comparisons, see the Java `compareTo` documentation. The values of the And and Or operators must be non-empty arrays of Choice Rules that must not themselves contain Next fields. Likewise, the value of a Not operator must be a single Choice Rule that must not contain Next fields.

You can create complex, nested Choice Rules using And, Not, and Or. However, the Next field can appear only in a top-level Choice Rule.

**Wait**

A Wait state ("Type": "Wait") delays the state machine from continuing for a specified time. You can choose either a relative time, specified in seconds from when the state begins, or an absolute end time, specified as a timestamp.
In addition to the common state fields (p. 94), wait states have one of the following fields.

**Seconds**

A time, in seconds, to wait before beginning the state specified in the Next field.

**Timestamp**

An absolute time to wait until beginning the state specified in the Next field.

Timestamps must conform to the RFC3339 profile of ISO 8601, with the further restrictions that an uppercase `T` must separate the date and time portions, and an uppercase `Z` must denote that a numeric time zone offset is not present, for example, `2016-08-18T17:33:00Z`.

**SecondsPath**

A time, in seconds, to wait before beginning the state specified in the Next field, specified using a path (p. 120) from the state's input data.

**TimestampPath**

An absolute time to wait until beginning the state specified in the Next field, specified using a path (p. 120) from the state's input data.

**Note**

You must specify exactly one of Seconds, Timestamp, SecondsPath, or TimestampPath.

**Wait State Examples**

The following wait state introduces a 10-second delay into a state machine.

```
"wait_ten_seconds": {
  "Type": "Wait",
  "Seconds": 10,
  "Next": "NextState"
}
```

In the next example, the wait state waits until an absolute time: March 14th, 2016, at 1:59 PM UTC.

```
"wait_until": {
  "Type": "Wait",
  "Timestamp": "2016-03-14T01:59:00Z",
  "Next": "NextState"
}
```

You don't have to hard-code the wait duration. For example, given the following input data:

```
{
  "expirydate": "2016-03-14T01:59:00Z"
}
```

You can select the value of "expirydate" from the input using a reference path (p. 120) to select it from the input data.

```
"wait_until": {
  "Type": "Wait",
  "TimestampPath": ".expirydate",
}
```
Succeed

A Succeed state ("Type": "Succeed") stops an execution successfully. The Succeed state is a useful target for Choice state branches that don’t do anything but stop the execution.

Because Succeed states are terminal states, they have no Next field, and don’t need an End field, as shown in the following example.

```
"SuccessState": {
"Type": "Succeed"
}
```

Fail

A Fail state ("Type": "Fail") stops the execution of the state machine and marks it as a failure.

The Fail state only allows the use of Type and Comment fields from the set of common state fields (p. 94). In addition, the Fail state allows the following fields.

- **Cause (Optional)**
  Provides a custom failure string that can be used for operational or diagnostic purposes.

- **Error (Optional)**
  Provides an error name that can be used for error handling (Retry/Catch), operational, or diagnostic purposes.

Because Fail states always exit the state machine, they have no Next field and don’t require an End field.

The following is an example.

```
"FailState": {
"Type": "Fail",
"Cause": "Invalid response.",
"Error": "ErrorA"
}
```

Parallel

The Parallel state ("Type": "Parallel") can be used to create parallel branches of execution in your state machine.

In addition to the common state fields (p. 94), Parallel states include these additional fields.

- **Branches (Required)**
  An array of objects that specify state machines to execute in parallel. Each such state machine object must have fields named States and StartAt, whose meanings are exactly like those in the top level of a state machine.
**ResultPath (Optional)**

Specifies where (in the input) to place the output of the branches. The input is then filtered as specified by the OutputPath field (if present) before being used as the state's output. For more information, see Input and Output Processing (p. 120).

**Retry (Optional)**

An array of objects, called Retriers, that define a retry policy in case the state encounters runtime errors. For more information, see Examples Using Retry and Using Catch (p. 141).

**Catch (Optional)**

An array of objects, called Catchers, that define a fallback state that is executed if the state encounters runtime errors and its retry policy is exhausted or isn't defined. For more information, see Fallback States (p. 140).

A Parallel state causes AWS Step Functions to execute each branch, starting with the state named in that branch's StartAt field, as concurrently as possible, and wait until all branches terminate (reach a terminal state) before processing the Parallel state's Next field.

### Parallel State Example

```json
{
  "Comment": "Parallel Example.",
  "StartAt": "LookupCustomerInfo",
  "States": {
    "LookupCustomerInfo": {
      "Type": "Parallel",
      "End": true,
      "Branches": [
        {
          "StartAt": "LookupAddress",
          "States": {
            "LookupAddress": {
              "Type": "Task",
              "End": true
            }
          }
        },
        {
          "StartAt": "LookupPhone",
          "States": {
            "LookupPhone": {
              "Type": "Task",
              "End": true
            }
          }
        }
      ]
    }
  }
}
```

In this example, the LookupAddress and LookupPhone branches are executed in parallel. Here is how the visual workflow looks in the Step Functions console.
Each branch must be self-contained. A state in one branch of a Parallel state must not have a Next field that targets a field outside of that branch, nor can any other state outside the branch transition into that branch.

**Parallel State Input and Output Processing**

A Parallel state provides each branch with a copy of its own input data (subject to modification by the InputPath field). It generates output that is an array with one element for each branch, containing the output from that branch. There is no requirement that all elements be of the same type. The output array can be inserted into the input data (and the whole sent as the Parallel state's output) by using a ResultPath field in the usual way (see Input and Output Processing (p. 120)).

```json
{
  "Comment": "Parallel Example."
  "StartAt": "FunWithMath",
  "States": {
    "FunWithMath": {
      "Type": "Parallel",
      "End": true,
      "Branches": [
      {
        "StartAt": "Add",
        "States": {
          "Add": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "End": true
          }
        }
      },
      {
        "StartAt": "Subtract",
        "States": {
          "Subtract": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "End": true
          }
        }
      }
    ]
  }
}
```
If the FunWithMath state was given the array \([3, 2]\) as input, then both the Add and Subtract states receive that array as input. The output of Add would be 5, that of Subtract would be 1, and the output of the Parallel state would be an array.

\[
[5, 1]
\]

**Error Handling**

If any branch fails, because of an unhandled error or by transitioning to a Fail state, the entire Parallel state is considered to have failed and all its branches are stopped. If the error is not handled by the Parallel state itself, Step Functions stops the execution with an error.

**Note**

When a parallel state fails, invoked Lambda functions continue to run and activity workers processing a task token are not stopped.

- To stop long-running activities, use heartbeats to detect if its branch has been stopped by Step Functions, and stop workers that are processing tasks. Calling SendTaskHeartbeat, SendTaskSuccess, or SendTaskFailure will throw an error if the state has failed. See Heartbeat Errors.
- Running Lambda functions cannot be stopped. If you have implemented a fallback, use a Wait state so that cleanup work happens after the Lambda function has finished.

**Map**

The Map state ("Type": "Map") can be used to run a set of steps for each element of an input array. While the Parallel (p. 111) state executes multiple branches of steps using the same input, a Map state will execute the same steps for multiple entries of an array in the state input.

For an introduction to using a Map state, see the Map State Tutorial (p. 79).

In addition to the common state fields (p. 94), Map states include these additional fields.

**Iterator (Required)**

The “Iterator” field's value is an object that defines a state machine which will process each element of the array.

**ItemsPath (Optional)**

The “ItemsPath” field's value is a reference path identifying where in the effective input the array field is found. For more information, see ItemsPath (p. 124).

States within an "Iterator" field can only transition to each other, and no state outside the “ItemsPath” field can transition to a state within it.

If any iteration fails, entire Map state fails, and all iterations are terminated.

**MaxConcurrency (Optional)**

The “MaxConcurrency” field's value is an integer that provides an upper bound on how many invocations of the Iterator may run in parallel. For instance, a "MaxConcurrency" value of 10 will limit your Map state to 10 concurrent iterations running at one time.
Note
Concurrent iterations may be limited. When this occurs, some iterations will not begin until previous iterations have completed. The likelihood of this occurring increases when your input array has more than 40 items.

The default value is "0", which places no quota on parallelism and iterations are invoked as concurrently as possible.

A "MaxConcurrency" value of "1" invokes the "Iterator" once for each array element in the order of their appearance in the input, and will not start a new iteration until the previous has completed.

ResultPath (Optional)
Specifies where (in the input) to place the output of the branches. The input is then filtered as specified by the OutputPath field (if present) before being used as the state's output. For more information, see Input and Output Processing (p. 120).

Retry (Optional)
An array of objects, called Retriers, that define a retry policy in case the state encounters runtime errors. For more information, see Examples Using Retry and Using Catch (p. 141).

Catch (Optional)
An array of objects, called Catchers, that define a fallback state that is executed if the state encounters runtime errors and its retry policy is exhausted or isn't defined. For more information, see Fallback States (p. 140).

Map State Example
Consider the following input data for a Map state.

```json
{
    "ship-date": "2016-03-14T01:59:00Z",
    "detail": {
        "delivery-partner": "UQS",
        "shipped": [
            { "prod": "R31", "dest-code": 9511, "quantity": 1344 },
            { "prod": "S39", "dest-code": 9511, "quantity": 40 },
            { "prod": "R31", "dest-code": 9833, "quantity": 12 },
            { "prod": "R40", "dest-code": 9860, "quantity": 887 },
            { "prod": "R40", "dest-code": 9511, "quantity": 1220 }
        ]
    }
}
```

Given the previous input, the Map state in the following example will invoke a AWS Lambda function (ship-val) once for each item of the array in the "shipped" field.

```json
"Validate-All": {
    "Type": "Map",
    "InputPath": ".detail",
    "ItemsPath": ".shipped",
    "MaxConcurrency": 0,
    "Iterator": {
        "StartAt": "Validate",
        "States": {
            "Validate": {
                "Type": "Task",
```
Each iteration of the `Map` state will send an item in the array (selected with the "ItemsPath" (p. 124) field) as input to the Lambda function. For instance, the input to one invocation of Lambda would be the following.

```
{
  "prod": "R31",
  "dest-code": 9511,
  "quantity": 1344
}
```

When complete, the output of the `Map` state is a JSON array where each item is the output of an iteration (in this case, the output of the `ship-val` Lambda function).

### Map State Example with Parameters

Suppose that the `ship-val` Lambda function in the previous example also needs information about the shipment’s courier as well as the items in the array for each iteration. You can include information from the input, along with information specific to the current iteration of the map state. Note the "Parameters" field in the following example.

```
"Validate-All": {
  "Type": "Map",
  "InputPath": ".detail",
  "ItemsPath": ".shipped",
  "MaxConcurrency": 0,
  "ResultPath": ".detail.shipped",
  "Parameters": {
    "parcel.$": ".$.Map.Item.Value",
    "courier.$": ".$.delivery-partner"
  },
  "Iterator": {
    "StartAt": "Validate",
    "States": {
      "Validate": {
        "Type": "Task",
        "End": true
      }
    }
  }
},
"End": true
```

The "Parameters" block replaces the input to the iterations with a JSON node that contains both the current item data from the context object (p. 134), and the courier information from the "delivery-partner" field from the `Map` state input. The following is an example of input to a single iteration, that is passed to an invocation of the `ship-val` Lambda function.

```
{
  "parcel": {
    "prod": "R31",
    "dest-code": 9511,
    "quantity": 1344
  }
}
```
In the previous Map state example, the `ResultPath` field produces output the same as the input, but with the “detail.shipped” field overwritten by an array in which each element is the output of the “ship-val” Lambda function for each iteration.

For more information see the following.

- Using a Map State to Call Lambda Multiple Times (p. 79)
- Input and Output Processing in Step Functions (p. 120)
- `ItemsPath` (p. 124)
- Context Object Data for Map States (p. 134)

### Map State Input and Output Processing

For a map state, `InputPath` works as it does for other state types, selecting a subset of the input.

The input of a Map state must include a JSON array, and it will run the Iterator section once for each item in the array. You specify where in the input to find this array using the `ItemsPath` field. If not specified, the value of `ItemsPath` is "$", and the Iterator section expects that the array is the only input. A Map state may also include an `ItemsPath` field, whose value must be a Reference Path (p. 122). The `ItemsPath` field selects where in the input to find the array to use for iterations. The Reference Path is applied to the effective input (after `InputPath` is applied) and must identify a field whose value is a JSON array.

The input to each iteration, by default, is a single element of the array field identified by the `ItemsPath` value, This may be overridden using the `Parameters` field.

When complete, the output of the Map state is a JSON array, where each item is the output of an iteration.

For more information, see the following.

- Map State Tutorial (p. 79)
- Map State Example with Parameters (p. 116)
- Input and Output Processing in Step Functions (p. 120)
- Context Object Data for Map States (p. 134)
- Dynamically Process Data with a Map State (p. 209)

### Transitions

When an execution of a state machine is launched, the system begins with the state referenced in the top-level `StartAt` field. This field (a string) must exactly match, including case, the name of one of the states.

After executing a state, AWS Step Functions uses the value of the `Next` field to determine the next state to advance to.

`Next` fields also specify state names as strings, and must match the name of a state specified in the state machine description exactly (case sensitive).
For example, the following state includes a transition to `NextState`.

```json
"SomeState" : {
    ...
    "Next" : "NextState"
}
```

Most states permit only a single transition rule via the `Next` field. However, certain flow-control states (for example, a `Choice` state) allow you to specify multiple transition rules, each with its own `Next` field. The Amazon States Language (p. 92) provides details about each of the state types you can specify, including information about how to specify transitions.

States can have multiple incoming transitions from other states.

The process repeats until it reaches a terminal state (a state with "Type": `Succeed`, "Type": `Fail`, or "End": `true`), or a runtime error occurs.

The following rules apply to states within a state machine:

- States can occur in any order within the enclosing block, but the order in which they're listed doesn't affect the order in which they're run. That order is determined by the contents of the states.
- Within a state machine, there can be only one state designated as the `start` state, which is designated by the value of the `StartAt` field in the top-level structure.
- Depending on your state machine logic—for example, if your state machine has multiple branches of execution—you may have more than one `end` state.
- If your state machine consists of only one state, it can be both the `start` state and the `end` state.

## State Machine Data

State machine data takes the following forms:

- The initial input into a state machine
- Data passed between states
- The output from a state machine

This section describes how state machine data is formatted and used in AWS Step Functions.

### Topics

- Data Format (p. 118)
- State Machine Input/Output (p. 119)
- State Input/Output (p. 119)

## Data Format

State machine data is represented by JSON text, so you can provide values using any data type supported by JSON.

**Note**

- Numbers in JSON text format conform to JavaScript semantics. These numbers typically correspond to double-precision IEEE-854 values.
State Machine Input/Output

You can give AWS Step Functions initial input data by passing it to a `StartExecution` action when you start an execution, or by passing initial data using the Step Functions console. Initial data is passed to the state machine's `StartAt` state. If no input is provided, the default is an empty object `{}`.

The output of the execution is returned by the last state (terminal). This output appears as JSON text in the execution's result.

For Standard Workflows, you can retrieve execution results from the execution history using external callers (for example, in the `DescribeExecution` action). You can view execution results on the Step Functions console.

For Express Workflows, if you have enabled logging, you can retrieve results from CloudWatch Logs. See Logging Using CloudWatch Logs (p. 300) for more information.

State Input/Output

Each state's input consists of JSON text from the preceding state or, for the `StartAt` state, the input into the execution. Certain flow-control states echo their input to their output.

In the following example, the state machine adds two numbers together.

1. Define the AWS Lambda function.

   ```javascript
   function Add(input) {
   var numbers = JSON.parse(input).numbers;
   var total = numbers.reduce(
       function(previousValue, currentValue, index, array) {
         return previousValue + currentValue;
       });
   return JSON.stringify({ result: total });
   }
   ```

2. Define the state machine.

   ```javascript
   {  
     "Comment": "An example that adds two numbers together.",  
     "StartAt": "Add",  
     "Version": "1.0",  
     "TimeoutSeconds": 10,  
     "States":  
     {  
       "Add": {  
         "Type": "Task",  
         "End": true  
       }  
     }  
   }
   ```

3. Start an execution with the following JSON text.

   ```json
   { "numbers": [3, 4] }
   ```
The Add state receives the JSON text and passes it to the Lambda function.

The Lambda function returns the result of the calculation to the state.

The state returns the following value in its output.

```json
{ "result": 7 }
```

Because Add is also the final state in the state machine, this value is returned as the state machine's output.

If the final state returns no output, then the state machine returns an empty object ({}).

For more information, see Input and Output Processing in Step Functions (p. 120).

## Input and Output Processing in Step Functions

A Step Functions execution receives a JSON text as input and passes that input to the first state in the workflow. Individual states receive JSON as input and usually pass JSON as output to the next state. Understanding how this information flows from state to state, and learning how to filter and manipulate this data, is key to effectively designing and implementing workflows in AWS Step Functions.

In the Amazon States Language, these fields filter and control the flow of JSON from state to state:

- **InputPath**
- **OutputPath**
- **ResultPath**
- **Parameters**

The following diagram shows how JSON information moves through a task state. **InputPath** selects which parts of the JSON input to pass to the task of the Task state (for example, an AWS Lambda function). **ResultPath** then selects what combination of the state input and the task result to pass to the output. **OutputPath** can filter the JSON output to further limit the information that's passed to the output.
InputPath, Parameters, ResultPath, and OutputPath each manipulate JSON as it moves through each state in your workflow.

Each can use **paths** (p. 121) to select portions of the JSON from the input or the result. A path is a string, beginning with $, that identifies nodes within JSON text. Step Functions paths use **JsonPath** syntax.

**Topics**
- Paths (p. 121)
- InputPath and Parameters (p. 122)
- ItemsPath (p. 124)
- ResultPath (p. 125)
- OutputPath (p. 131)
- InputPath, ResultPath and OutputPath Example (p. 131)
- Context Object (p. 133)

**Paths**

In the Amazon States Language, a **path** is a string beginning with $ that you can use to identify components within JSON text. Paths follow **JsonPath** syntax. You can specify a path to access subsets of the input when specifying values for InputPath, ResultPath, and OutputPath. For more information see **Input and Output Processing in Step Functions** (p. 120).
AWS Step Functions Developer Guide
InputPath and Parameters

Note
You can also specify a JSON node of the input or the context object by using paths within the "Parameters" field of a state definition. See Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150).

Reference Paths

A reference path is a path whose syntax is limited in such a way that it can identify only a single node in a JSON structure:

- You can access object fields using only dot (.) and square bracket ([ ]) notation.
- The operators @ .. , : ? * aren't supported.
- Functions such as length() aren't supported.

For example, if state input data contains the following values:

```json
{
  "foo": 123,
  "bar": ["a", "b", "c"],
  "car": {
    "cdr": true
  }
}
```

The following reference paths would return the following.

```plaintext
$.foo => 123
$.bar => ["a", "b", "c"]
$.car.cdr => true
```

Certain states use paths and reference paths to control the flow of a state machine or configure a state's settings or options.

InputPath and Parameters

Both the "InputPath" and "Parameters" fields provide a way to manipulate JSON as it moves through your workflow. InputPath can limit the input that is passed by filtering the JSON notation by using a path (see Paths (p. 121)). The "Parameters" field enables you to pass a collection of key-value pairs, where the values are either static values that you define in your state machine definition, or that are selected from the input using a path.

AWS Step Functions applies the "InputPath" field first, and then the "Parameters" field. You can first filter your raw input to a selection you want using InputPath, and then apply Parameters to manipulate that input further, or add new values.

InputPath

Use InputPath to select a portion of the state input.

For example, suppose the input to your state includes the following.

```json
{
  "comment": "Example for InputPath.",
  "dataset1": {
    "val1": 1,
    "val2": 2,
    "val3": 3
  }
}
```
"dataset2": {
    "val1": "a",
    "val2": "b",
    "val3": "c"
}
}

You could apply the InputPath.

"InputPath": "$.dataset2",

With the previous InputPath, the following is the JSON that is passed as the input.

{
    "val1": "a",
    "val2": "b",
    "val3": "c"
}

**Note**

A path can yield a selection of values. Consider the following example.

{ "a": [1, 2, 3, 4] }

If you apply the path $.a[0:2], the following is the result.

[ 1, 2 ]

**Parameters**

Use "Parameters" field to create a collection of key-value pairs that are passed as input. The values of each can either be static values that you include in your state machine definition, or selected from either the input or the context object with a path. For key-value pairs where the value is selected using a path, the key name must end in ".$.

For example, suppose you provide the following input.

{
    "comment": "Example for Parameters.",
    "product": {
        "details": {
            "color": "blue",
            "size": "small",
            "material": "cotton"
        },
        "availability": "in stock",
        "sku": "2317",
        "cost": "$23"
    }
}

To select some of the information, you could specify these parameters in your state machine definition.

"Parameters": {
    "comment": "Selecting what I care about.",
    "MyDetails": {
        "size.$": "$.product.details.size",
        "exists.$": "$.product.availability",
        "StaticValue": "foo"
Given the previous input and the "Parameters" field, this is the JSON that is passed.

```json
{
  "comment": "Selecting what I care about.",
  "MyDetails": {
    "size": "small",
    "exists": "in stock",
    "StaticValue": "foo"
  }
}
```

In addition to the input, you can access a special JSON object, known as the context object. The context object includes information about your state machine execution. See Context Object (p. 133).

**Note**
The "Parameters" field can also pass information to connected resources. For example, if your task state is orchestrating an AWS Batch job, you can pass the relevant API parameters directly to the API actions of that service. For more information, see:

- Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150)
- Service Integrations (p. 144)

### ItemsPath

The `ItemsPath` field is used in a `Map` state (p. 114) to select an array in the input. A `Map` state is used to iterate steps for each item in an array contained in the input. By default, a `Map` state sets `ItemsPath` to "\$" selecting the entire input. If the input to the `Map` state is a JSON array it will run an iteration for each item in the array, passing that item to the iteration as input. For an example of this, see the Map State Tutorial (p. 79).

The `ItemsPath` field allows you to specify a location in the input to find the JSON array to use for iterations. The value of `ItemsPath` must be a Reference Path (p. 122), and it must identify a value that is a JSON array. For instance, consider input to a `Map` state that includes two arrays, like the following example.

```json
{
  "ThingsPiratesSay": [
    { "say": "Avast!" },
    { "say": "Yar!" },
    { "say": "Walk the Plank!" }
  ],
  "ThingsGiantsSay": [
    { "say": "Fee!" },
    { "say": "Fi!" },
    { "say": "Fo!" }
  ]
}
```
In this case, you could specify which array to use for Map state iterations by selecting a specific array with ItemsPath. The following state machine definition specifies the "ThingsPiratesSay" array in the input using ItemsPath, and will run an iteration of the SayWord pass state for each item in the "ThingsPiratesSay" array.

```
{
  "StartAt": "PiratesSay",
  "States": {
    "PiratesSay": {
      "Type": "Map",
      "ItemsPath": "$.ThingsPiratesSay",
      "Iterator": {
        "StartAt": "SayWord",
        "States": {
          "SayWord": {
            "Type": "Pass",
            "End": true
          }
        }
      },
      "End": true
    }
  }
}
```

When processing input, ItemsPath is applied after InputPath (p. 122). It operates on the effective input to the state, after InputPath has filtered the input.

For more information on Map states, see the following:

- Map State (p. 114)
- Map (p. 114)
- Map State Example (p. 115)
- Using a Map State to Call Lambda Multiple Times (p. 79)
- Map State Input and Output Processing (p. 117)
- Dynamically Process Data with a Map State (p. 209)

**ResultPath**

The output of a state can be a copy of its input, the result it produces (for example, output from a Task state's Lambda function), or a combination of its input and result. Use ResultPath to control which combination of these is passed to the state output.

The following state types can generate a result and can include ResultPath:

- Pass (p. 94)
- Task (p. 95)
- Parallel (p. 111)

Use ResultPath to combine a task result with task input, or to select one of these. The path you provide to ResultPath controls what information passes to the output.
**ResultPath**

ResultPath is limited to using reference paths (p. 122), which limit scope so that it can identify only a single node in JSON. See Reference Paths (p. 122) in the Amazon States Language (p. 92).

These examples are based on the state machine and Lambda function described in the Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20) tutorial. Work through that tutorial and test different outputs by trying various paths in a ResultPath field.

Use ResultPath to:
- Use ResultPath to Replace the Input with the Result (p. 126)
- Discard the Result and Keep the Original Input (p. 127)
- Use ResultPath to Include the Result with the Input (p. 127)
- Use ResultPath to Update a Node in the Input with the Result (p. 129)
- Use ResultPath to Include Both Error and Input in a Catch (p. 130)

Use ResultPath to Replace the Input with the Result

If you don’t specify a ResultPath, the default behavior is as if you had specified "ResultPath": ".". Because this tells the state to replace the entire input with the result, the state input is completely replaced by the result coming from the task result.

The following diagram shows how ResultPath can completely replace the input with the result of the task.

![Diagram showing how ResultPath can completely replace the input with the result of the task.](image)

Using the state machine and Lambda function described in Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20), if we pass the following input:

```json
{
    "comment": "This is a test of the input and output of a Task state.",
    "details": "Default example",
    "who": "AWS Step Functions"
}
```
The Lambda function provides the following result.

"Hello, AWS Step Functions!"

If `ResultPath` isn't specified in the state, or if "ResultPath": "$" is set, the input of the state is replaced by the result of the Lambda function, and the output of the state is the following.

"Hello, AWS Step Functions!"

**Note**

`ResultPath` is used to include content from the result with the input, before passing it to the output. But, if `ResultPath` isn't specified, the default is to replace the entire input.

**Discard the Result and Keep the Original Input**

If you set `ResultPath` to `null`, it will pass the original input to the output. Using "ResultPath": `null`, the state's input payload will be copied directly to the output, with no regard for the result.

The following diagram shows how a null `ResultPath` will copy the input directly to the output.

**Use ResultPath to Include the Result with the Input**

The following diagram shows how `ResultPath` can include the result with the input.
Using the state machine and Lambda function described in the Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20) tutorial, we could pass the following input.

```json
{
    "comment": "This is a test of the input and output of a Task state.",
    "details": "Default example",
    "who": "AWS Step Functions"
}
```

The result of the Lambda function is the following.

"Hello, AWS Step Functions!"

To preserve the input, insert the result of the Lambda function, and then pass the combined JSON to the next state, we could set `ResultPath` to the following.

```
"ResultPath": ".taskresult"
```

This includes the result of the Lambda function with the original input.

```json
{
    "comment": "This is a test of input and output of a Task state.",
    "details": "Default behavior example",
    "who": "AWS Step Functions",
    "taskresult": "Hello, AWS Step Functions!"
}
```

The output of the Lambda function is appended to the original input as a value for `taskresult`. The input, including the newly inserted value, is passed to the next state.

You can also insert the result into a child node of the input. Set the `ResultPath` to the following.
"ResultPath": ".strings.lambdaresult"

Start an execution using the following input.

```json
{
  "comment": "An input comment.",
  "strings": {
    "string1": "foo",
    "string2": "bar",
    "string3": "baz"
  },
  "who": "AWS Step Functions"
}
```

The result of the Lambda function is inserted as a child of the `strings` node in the input.

```json
{
  "comment": "An input comment.",
  "strings": {
    "string1": "foo",
    "string2": "bar",
    "string3": "baz",
    "lambdaresult": "Hello, AWS Step Functions!"
  },
  "who": "AWS Step Functions"
}
```

The state output now includes the original input JSON with the result as a child node.

**Use ResultPath to Update a Node in the Input with the Result**

The following diagram shows how `ResultPath` can update the value of existing JSON nodes in the input with values from the task result.
Using the example of the state machine and Lambda function described in the Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20) tutorial, we could pass the following input.

```json
{
    "comment": "This is a test of the input and output of a Task state.",
    "details": "Default example",
    "who": "AWS Step Functions"
}
```

The result of the Lambda function is the following.

`Hello, AWS Step Functions!`

Instead of preserving the input and inserting the result as a new node in the JSON, we can overwrite an existing node.

For example, just as omitting or setting "ResultPath": "]" overwrites the entire node, you can specify an individual node to overwrite with the result.

```
"ResultPath": "].comment"
```

Because the comment node already exists in the state input, setting ResultPath to "].comment" replaces that node in the input with the result of the Lambda function. Without further filtering by OutputPath, the following is passed to the output.

```json
{
    "comment": "Hello, AWS Step Functions!",
    "details": "Default behavior example",
    "who": "AWS Step Functions",
}
```

The value for the comment node, "This is a test of the input and output of a Task state.", is replaced by the result of the Lambda function: "Hello, AWS Step Functions!" in the state output.

### Use ResultPath to Include Both Error and Input in a Catch

The Handling Error Conditions Using a Step Functions State Machine (p. 36) tutorial shows how to use a state machine to catch an error. In some cases, you might want to preserve the original input with the error. Use ResultPath in a Catch to include the error with the original input, instead of replacing it.

```
"Catch": [{
    "ErrorEquals": ["States.ALL"],
    "Next": "NextTask",
    "ResultPath": "].error"
}]```

If the previous Catch statement catches an error, it includes the result in an error node within the state input. For example, with the following input:

```json
{"foo": "bar"}
```

The state output when catching an error is the following.

```json
{
```
"foo": "bar",
"error": {
    "Error": "Error here"
}
}

For more information about error handling, see the following:
- Error Handling in Step Functions (p. 137)
- Handling Error Conditions Using a Step Functions State Machine (p. 36)

**OutputPath**

OutputPath enables you to select a portion of the state output to pass to the next state. This enables you to filter out unwanted information, and pass only the portion of JSON that you care about.

If you don’t specify an `OutputPath` the default value is `. This passes the entire JSON node (determined by the state input, the task result, and `ResultPath`) to the next state.

For more information, see the following:
- Paths in the Amazon States Language (p. 121)
- InputPath, ResultPath and OutputPath Example (p. 131)
- Pass Static JSON as Parameters (p. 151)
- Input and Output Processing in Step Functions (p. 120)

**InputPath, ResultPath and OutputPath Example**

Any state other than a `Fail` state can include `InputPath`, `ResultPath` or `OutputPath`. These allow you to use a path to filter the JSON as it moves through your workflow.

For example, start with the AWS Lambda function and state machine described in the Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20) tutorial. Modify the state machine so that it includes the following `InputPath`, `ResultPath`, and `OutputPath`.

```json
{
    "Comment": "A Hello World example of the Amazon States Language using an AWS Lambda function",
    "StartAt": "HelloWorld",
    "States": {
        "HelloWorld": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "InputPath": "$.lambda",
            "ResultPath": "$.data.lambdaresult",
            "OutputPath": "$.data",
            "End": true
        }
    }
}
```

Start an execution using the following input.

```json
{
    "comment": "An input comment."
}
```
Assume that the comment and extra nodes can be discarded, but that we want to include the output of the Lambda function, and preserve the information in the data node.

In the updated state machine, the Task state is altered to process the input to the task.

```
"InputPath": ".\lambda",
```

This line in the state machine definition limits the task input to only the lambda node from the state input. The Lambda function receives only the JSON object {"who": "AWS Step Functions"} as input.

```
"ResultPath": ".\data.\lambdaresult",
```

This ResultPath tells the state machine to insert the result of the Lambda function into a node named lambdaresult, as a child of the data node in the original state machine input. Without further processing with OutputPath, the input of the state now includes the result of the Lambda function with the original input.

```
{
  "comment": "An input comment.",
  "data": {
    "val1": 23,
    "val2": 17,
    "lambdaresult": "Hello, AWS Step Functions!"
  },
  "extra": "foo",
  "lambda": {
    "who": "AWS Step Functions"
  }
}
```

But, our goal was to preserve only the data node, and include the result of the Lambda function. OutputPath filters this combined JSON before passing it to the state output.

```
"OutputPath": ".\data",
```

This selects only the data node from the original input (including the lambdaresult child inserted by ResultPath) to be passed to the output. The state output is filtered to the following.

```
{
  "val1": 23,
  "val2": 17,
  "lambdaresult": "Hello, AWS Step Functions!"
}
```

In this Task state:
1. InputPath sends only the lambda node from the input to the Lambda function.
2. ResultPath inserts the result as a child of the data node in the original input.
3. OutputPath filters the state input (which now includes the result of the Lambda function) so that it passes only the data node to the state output.

For more information, see Input and Output Processing in Step Functions (p. 120).

Context Object

The context object is an internal JSON structure that is available during an execution. It includes information about your state machine and execution that you can access from within the "Parameters" field of a state definition. This allows your workflows access to information about their specific execution.

Context Object Format

The context object includes information about the state machine, state, execution, and task. This JSON object includes nodes for each type of data, and is in the following format.

```
{
  "Execution": {
    "Id": "String",
    "Input": {},
    "StartTime": "Format: ISO 8601"
  },
  "State": {
    "EnteredTime": "Format: ISO 8601",
    "Name": "String",
    "RetryCount": Number
  },
  "StateMachine": {
    "Id": "String"
  },
  "Task": {
    "Token": "String"
  }
}
```

During an execution, the context object is populated with relevant data for the "Parameters" field from where it is accessed. The value for a "Task" field is null if the "Parameters" field is outside of a task state.

Content from a running execution includes specifics in the following format.

```
{
  "Execution": {
    "Id": "arn:aws:states:us-east-1:123456789012:execution:stateMachineName:executionName",
    "Input": {
      "key": "value"
    },
    "Name": "executionName",
    "RoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role...",
    "StartTime": "2019-03-26T20:14:13.192Z"
  },
  "State": {
    "Name": "Test",
```
Context Object

Note
For context object data related to Map states, see Context Object Data for Map States (p. 134).

Accessing the Context Object

To access the context object, first specify the parameter name by appending .$ to the end, as you do when selecting state input with a path. Then, to access context object data instead of the input, prepend the path with $$.. This tells AWS Step Functions to use the path to select a node in the context object.

This example task state uses a path to retrieve and pass the execution Amazon Resource Name (ARN) to an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) message.

```json
{
  "Order Flight Ticket Queue": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sqs:sendMessage",
    "Parameters": {
      "QueueUrl": "https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/123456789012/flight-purchase",
      "MessageBody": {
        "From": "YVR",
        "To": "SEA",
        "Execution.$": "$$Execution.Id"
      }
    },
    "Next": "NEXT_STATE"
  }
}
```

Note
For more information about using the task token when calling an integrated service, see Wait for a Callback with the Task Token (p. 147).

Context Object Data for Map States

There are two additional items available in the context object when processing a Map state (p. 114): Index and Value. The Index contains the index number for the array item that is being processed in the current iteration. Within a Map state, the context object includes the following.

```json
"Map": {
  "Item": {
    "Index": "Number",
    "Value": "String"
  }
}
```

These are available only in a Map state, and can be specified in the "Parameters" (p. 123) field, before the "Iterator" section.
**Note**
You must define parameters from the context object in the "Parameters" block of the main Map state, not within the states included in the "Iterator" section.

Given a state machine with a simple Map state, we can inject information from the context object as follows.

```
{
  "StartAt": "ExampleMapState",
  "States": {
    "ExampleMapState": {
      "Type": "Map",
      "Parameters": {
        "ContextIndex.$": "$.Map.Item.Index",
        "ContextValue.$": "$.Map.Item.Value"
      },
      "Iterator": {
        "StartAt": "TestPass",
        "States": {
          "TestPass": {
            "Type": "Pass",
            "End": true
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

If you execute the previous state machine with the following input, Index and Value are inserted in the output.

```
[
  { "who": "bob" },
  { "who": "meg" },
  { "who": "joe" }
]
```

The output for the execution is the following.

```
[
  { "ContextValue": { "who": "bob" } },
  "ContextIndex": 0
],
[
  { "ContextValue": { "who": "meg" } },
  "ContextIndex": 1
],
[
  { "ContextValue": { "who": "joe" } }
]
Executions in Step Functions

A state machine execution occurs when an AWS Step Functions state machine runs and performs its tasks. Each Step Functions state machine can have multiple simultaneous executions, which you can initiate from the Step Functions console, or by using the AWS SDKs, the Step Functions API actions, or the AWS Command Line Interface (AWS CLI). An execution receives JSON input and produces JSON output. You can start a Step Functions execution in the following ways:

- Call the `StartExecution` API action.
- Start a new execution (p. 14) in the Step Functions console.
- Use Amazon CloudWatch Events (p. 42) to start an execution.
- Start an execution with Amazon API Gateway (p. 47).
- Start a nested workflow execution (p. 136) from a Task state.

For more information about the different ways of working with Step Functions, see Development Options (p. 17).

Start Workflow Executions from a Task State

AWS Step Functions can start workflow executions directly from a Task state of a state machine. This allows you to break your workflows into smaller state machines, and to start executions of these other state machines. By starting these new workflow executions you can:

- Separate higher level workflow from lower level, task-specific workflows.
- Avoid repetitive elements by calling a separate state machine multiple times.
- Create a library of modular reusable workflows for faster development.
- Reduce complexity and make it easier to edit and troubleshoot state machines.

Step Functions can start these workflow executions by calling its own API as an integrated service (p. 144). Simply call the `StartExecution` API action from your Task state and pass the necessary parameters. You can call the Step Functions API using any of the service integration patterns (p. 146). To start a new execution of a state machine, use a Task state similar to the following.

```json
{
  "Type":"Task",
  "Resource":"arn:aws:states:::states:startExecution",
  "Parameters":{
    "Input":{
      "Comment":"Hello world!"
    },
    "Retry":{[...
```
This Task state will start a new execution of the HelloWorld state machine, and will pass the JSON comment as input.

**Note**
The `StartExecution` API action quotas can limit the number of executions that you can start. Use the `Retry on StepFunctions.ExecutionLimitExceeded` to ensure your execution is started. See the following:

- Quotas Related to API Action Throttling (p. 244)
- Error Handling in Step Functions (p. 137)

### Associate Workflow Executions

To associate a started workflow execution with the execution that started it, pass the execution ID from the context object to the execution input. You can access the ID from the context object from your Task state in a running execution. Pass the execution ID by appending `.$` to the parameter name, and referencing the ID in the context object with `$$$.Execution.Id`.

```
"AWS_STEP_FUNCTIONS_STARTED_BY_EXECUTION_ID.$": "$$$.Execution.Id"
```

You can use a special parameter named `AWS_STEP_FUNCTIONS_STARTED_BY_EXECUTION_ID` when you start an execution. If included, this association provides links in the Step details section of the Step Functions console. When provided, you can easily trace the executions of your workflows from starting executions to their started workflow executions. Using the previous example, associate the execution ID with the started execution of the HelloWorld state machine, as follows.

```
{
   "Type":"Task",
   "Resource":"arn:aws:states:::states:startExecution",
   "Parameters":{
      "Input":{
         "Comment": "Hello world!",
         "AWS_STEP_FUNCTIONS_STARTED_BY_EXECUTION_ID.$": "$$$.Execution.Id"
      }
   },
   "End":true
}
```

For more information, see the following:

- Service Integrations (p. 144)
- Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150)
- Accessing the Context Object (p. 134)
- AWS Step Functions (p. 178)

### Error Handling in Step Functions

Any state can encounter runtime errors. Errors can happen for various reasons:
• State machine definition issues (for example, no matching rule in a Choice state)
• Task failures (for example, an exception in a Lambda function)
• Transient issues (for example, network partition events)

By default, when a state reports an error, AWS Step Functions causes the execution to fail entirely.

**Error Names**

Step Functions identifies errors in the Amazon States Language using case-sensitive strings, known as *error names*. The Amazon States Language defines a set of built-in strings that name well-known errors, all beginning with the *States.* prefix.

**States.ALL**

A wildcard that matches any known error name.

**States.Runtime**

An execution failed due to some exception that could not be processed. Often these are caused by errors at runtime, such as attempting to apply `InputPath` or `OutputPath` on a null JSON payload. A *States.Runtime* error is not retriable, and will always cause the execution to fail. A retry or catch on *States.ALL* will not catch *States.Runtime* errors.

**States.Timeout**

A Task state either ran longer than the `TimeoutSeconds` value, or failed to send a heartbeat for a period longer than the `HeartbeatSeconds` value.

**States.TaskFailed**

A Task state failed during the execution.

**States.Permissions**

A Task state failed because it had insufficient privileges to execute the specified code.

States can report errors with other names. However, these must not begin with the *States.* prefix.

As a best practice, ensure production code can handle AWS Lambda service exceptions (`Lambda ServiceException` and `Lambda.SdkClientException`). For more information, see Handle Lambda Service Exceptions (p. 241).

**Note**

Unhandled errors in Lambda are reported as `Lambda.Unknown` in the error output. These include out-of-memory errors and function timeouts. You can match on `Lambda.Unknown`, `States.ALL`, or `States.TaskFailed` to handle these errors. When Lambda hits the maximum number of invocations, the error is `Lambda.TooManyRequestsException`. For more information about Lambda Handled and Unhandled errors, see FunctionError in the **AWS Lambda Developer Guide**.

**Retrying after an Error**

Task and Parallel states can have a field named `Retry`, whose value must be an array of objects known as *retriers*. An individual retrier represents a certain number of retries, usually at increasing time intervals.

**Note**

Retries are treated as state transitions. For information about how state transitions affect billing, see **Step Functions Pricing**.
A retrier contains the following fields.

**ErrorEquals (Required)**

A non-empty array of strings that match error names. When a state reports an error, Step Functions scans through the retriers. When the error name appears in this array, it implements the retry policy described in this retrier.

**IntervalSeconds (Optional)**

An integer that represents the number of seconds before the first retry attempt (1 by default).

**MaxAttempts (Optional)**

A positive integer that represents the maximum number of retry attempts (3 by default). If the error recurs more times than specified, retries cease and normal error handling resumes. A value of 0 specifies that the error or errors are never retried.

**BackoffRate (Optional)**

The multiplier by which the retry interval increases during each attempt (2.0 by default).

This example of a `Retry` makes 2 retry attempts after waiting for 3 and 4.5 seconds.

```
"Retry": [ 
  { 
    "ErrorEquals": [ "States.Timeout" ],
    "IntervalSeconds": 3,
    "MaxAttempts": 2,
    "BackoffRate": 1.5
  } 
]
```

The reserved name `States.ALL` that appears in a retrier’s `ErrorEquals` field is a wildcard that matches any error name. It must appear alone in the `ErrorEquals` array and must appear in the last retrier in the `Retry` array.

This example of a `Retry` field retries any error except `States.Timeout`.

```
"Retry": [ 
  { 
    "ErrorEquals": [ "States.Timeout" ],
    "MaxAttempts": 0
  }, 
  { 
    "ErrorEquals": [ "States.ALL" ]
  }
]
```

**Complex Retry Scenarios**

A retrier's parameters apply across all visits to the retrier in the context of a single-state execution.

Consider the following `Task` state.

```
"X": { 
  "Type": "Task",
  "Next": "Y",
  "Retry": [ 
    { 
      "ErrorEquals": [ "ErrorA", "ErrorB" ],
      "IntervalSeconds": 1,
      "BackoffRate": 2.0,
      "MaxAttempts": 2
    },
    
```
This task fails five times in succession, outputting these error names: ErrorA, ErrorB, ErrorC, ErrorB, and ErrorB. The following occurs as a result:

- The first two errors match the first retrier and cause waits of 1 and 2 seconds.
- The third error matches the second retrier and causes a wait of 5 seconds.
- The fourth error matches the first retrier and causes a wait of 4 seconds.
- The fifth error also matches the first retrier. However, it has already reached its maximum of two retries (MaxAttempts) for that particular error (ErrorB), so it fails and execution is redirected to the Z state via the Catch field.

### Fallback States

Task and Parallel states can have a field named Catch. This field's value must be an array of objects, known as catchers.

A catcher contains the following fields.

- **ErrorEquals (Required)**
  
  A non-empty array of strings that match error names, specified exactly as they are with the retrier field of the same name.

- **Next (Required)**
  
  A string that must exactly match one of the state machine's state names.

- **ResultPath (Optional)**
  
  A path (p. 120) that determines what input is sent to the state specified in the Next field.

When a state reports an error and either there is no Retry field, or if retries fail to resolve the error, Step Functions scans through the catchers in the order listed in the array. When the error name appears in the value of a catcher's ErrorEquals field, the state machine transitions to the state named in the Next field.

The reserved name States.ALL that appears in a catcher's ErrorEquals field is a wildcard that matches any error name. It must appear alone in the ErrorEquals array and must appear in the last catcher in the Catch array.

The following example of a Catch field transitions to the state named RecoveryState when a Lambda function outputs an unhandled Java exception. Otherwise, the field transitions to the EndState state.

```
"Catch": [ {
    "ErrorEquals": [ "java.lang.Exception" ],
    "ResultPath": "$.error-info",
    "Next": "RecoveryState"
  }, {
    "ErrorEquals": [ "States.ALL" ],
    "Next": "EndState"
}
```
Note
Each catcher can specify multiple errors to handle.

Error Output

When Step Functions transitions to the state specified in a catch name, the object usually contains the field `Cause`. This field's value is a human-readable description of the error. This object is known as the error output.

In this example, the first catcher contains a `ResultPath` field. This works similarly to a `ResultPath` field in a state's top level, resulting in two possibilities:

- It takes the results of executing the state and overwrites a portion of the state's input (or all of the state's input).
- It takes the results and adds them to the input. In the case of an error handled by a catcher, the result of executing the state is the error output.

Thus, in this example, for the first catcher the error output is added to the input as a field named `error-info` (if there isn't already a field with this name in the input). Then, the entire input is sent to `RecoveryState`. For the second catcher, the error output overwrites the input and only the error output is sent to `EndState`.

Note
If you don't specify the `ResultPath` field, it defaults to `$`, which selects and overwrites the entire input.

When a state has both `Retry` and `Catch` fields, Step Functions uses any appropriate retrievers first, and only afterward applies the matching catcher transition if the retry policy fails to resolve the error.

Examples Using Retry and Using Catch

The state machines defined in the following examples assume the existence of two Lambda functions: one that always fails and one that waits long enough to allow a timeout defined in the state machine to occur.

This is a definition of a Lambda function that always fails, returning the message `error`. In the state machine examples that follow, this Lambda function is named `FailFunction`.

```javascript
exports.handler = (event, context, callback) => {
  callback("error");
};
```

This is a definition of a Lambda function that sleeps for 10 seconds. In the state machine examples that follow, this Lambda function is named `sleep10`.

Note
When you create this Lambda function in the Lambda console, remember to change the `Timeout` value in the Advanced settings section from 3 seconds (default) to 11 seconds.

```javascript
exports.handler = (event, context, callback) => {
  setTimeout(function(){
    setTimeout(function(){
      }, 11000);
  }, 11000);
};
```
Handling a Failure Using Retry

This state machine uses a Retry field to retry a function that fails and outputs the error name `HandledError`. The function is retried twice with an exponential backoff between retries.

```
{  
"Comment": "A Hello World example of the Amazon States Language using an AWS Lambda function",  
"StartAt": "HelloWorld",  
"States": {  
 "HelloWorld": {  
 "Type": "Task",  
 "Retry": [ {  
 "ErrorEquals": ["HandledError"],  
 "IntervalSeconds": 1,  
 "MaxAttempts": 2,  
 "BackoffRate": 2.0  
 } ],  
 "End": true  
 }  
}
```

This variant uses the predefined error code States.TaskFailed, which matches any error that a Lambda function outputs.

```
{  
"Comment": "A Hello World example of the Amazon States Language using an AWS Lambda function",  
"StartAt": "HelloWorld",  
"States": {  
 "HelloWorld": {  
 "Type": "Task",  
 "Retry": [ {  
 "ErrorEquals": ["States.TaskFailed"],  
 "IntervalSeconds": 1,  
 "MaxAttempts": 2,  
 "BackoffRate": 2.0  
 } ],  
 "End": true  
 }  
}
```

**Note**

As a best practice, tasks that reference a Lambda function should handle Lambda service exceptions. For more information, see Handle Lambda Service Exceptions (p. 241).

Handling a Failure Using Catch

This example uses a Catch field. When a Lambda function outputs an error, the error is caught and the state machine transitions to the fallback state.

```
{  
"Comment": "A Hello World example of the Amazon States Language using an AWS Lambda function",  
"StartAt": "HelloWorld",  
"States": {  
```
"HelloWorld": {
  "Type": "Task",
  "Catch": [ {
    "ErrorEquals": ["HandledError"],
    "Next": "fallback"
  } ],
  "End": true
},
"fallback": {
  "Type": "Pass",
  "Result": "Hello, AWS Step Functions!",
  "End": true
}
}

This variant uses the predefined error code States.TaskFailed, which matches any error that a Lambda function outputs.

{  "Comment": "A Hello World example of the Amazon States Language using an AWS Lambda function",
  "StartAt": "HelloWorld",
  "States": {
    "HelloWorld": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "Catch": [ {
        "ErrorEquals": ["States.TaskFailed"],
        "Next": "fallback"
      } ],
      "End": true
    },
    "fallback": {
      "Type": "Pass",
      "Result": "Hello, AWS Step Functions!",
      "End": true
    }
  }
}

Handling a Timeout Using Retry

This state machine uses a Retry field to retry a function that times out. The function is retried twice with an exponential backoff between retries.

{  "Comment": "A Hello World example of the Amazon States Language using an AWS Lambda function",
  "StartAt": "HelloWorld",
  "States": {
    "HelloWorld": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "TimeoutSeconds": 2,
      "Retry": [ {
        "ErrorEquals": ["States.Timeout"],
        "IntervalSeconds": 1,
        "MaxAttempts": 2,
        "BackoffRate": 2.0
      } ],
    }
  }
}
Handling a Timeout Using Catch

This example uses a Catch field. When a timeout occurs, the state machine transitions to the fallback state.

```json
{
  "Comment": "A Hello World example of the Amazon States Language using an AWS Lambda function",
  "StartAt": "HelloWorld",
  "States": {
    "HelloWorld": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "TimeoutSeconds": 2,
      "Catch": [
        {
          "ErrorEquals": ["States.Timeout"],
          "Next": "fallback"
        }
      ],
      "End": true
    },
    "fallback": {
      "Type": "Pass",
      "Result": "Hello, AWS Step Functions!",
      "End": true
    }
  }
}
```

**Note**
You can preserve the state input and the error by using ResultPath. See Use ResultPath to Include Both Error and Input in a Catch (p. 130).

Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions

AWS Step Functions integrates with some AWS services so that you can call API actions, and coordinate executions directly from the Amazon States Language in Step Functions. You can directly call and pass parameters to the APIs of those services.

You coordinate these services directly from a Task state in the Amazon States Language. For example, using Step Functions, you can call other services to:

- Invoke an AWS Lambda function.
- Run an AWS Batch job and then perform different actions based on the results.
- Insert or get an item from Amazon DynamoDB.
- Run an Amazon Elastic Container Service (Amazon ECS) task and wait for it to complete.
- Publish to a topic in Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS).
- Send a message in Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS).
- Manage a job for AWS Glue or Amazon SageMaker.
- Build workflows for executing Amazon EMR jobs.
Launch an AWS Step Functions workflow execution.

Standard Workflows and Express Workflows support the same set of service integrations but do not support the same integration patterns. Express Workflows do not support Run a Job (.sync) or Wait for Callback (.waitForTaskToken). For more information, see Standard vs. Express Workflows (p. 89).

**Standard Workflows**

**Supported Service Integrations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Request Response (p. 146)</th>
<th>Run a Job (.sync) (p. 147)</th>
<th>Wait for Callback (.waitForTaskToken) (p. 147)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lambda (p. 154)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS Batch (p. 156)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DynamoDB (p. 157)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon ECS/AWS Fargate (p. 158)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon SNS (p. 161)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon SQS (p. 162)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS Glue (p. 163)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon SageMaker (p. 164)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon EMR (p. 169)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS CodeBuild (p. 177)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS Step Functions (p. 178)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Express Workflows**

**Supported Service Integrations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Request Response (p. 146)</th>
<th>Run a Job (.sync) (p. 147)</th>
<th>Wait for Callback (.waitForTaskToken) (p. 147)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lambda (p. 154)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS Batch (p. 156)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DynamoDB (p. 157)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon ECS/AWS Fargate (p. 158)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon SNS (p. 161)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon SQS (p. 162)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS Glue (p. 163)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Service Integration Patterns

AWS Step Functions integrates with services directly in the Amazon States Language. You can control these AWS services using three service integration patterns:

- Call a service and let Step Functions progress to the next state immediately after it gets an HTTP response.
- Call a service and have Step Functions wait for a job to complete.
- Call a service with a task token and have Step Functions wait until that token is returned with a payload.

Each of these service integration patterns is controlled by how you create a URI in the "Resource" field of your task definition (p. 95).

Ways to Call an Integrated Service

- Request Response (p. 146)
- Run a Job (.sync) (p. 147)
- Wait for a Callback with the Task Token (.waitForTaskToken) (p. 147)

Note

For information about configuring AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) for integrated services, see IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258).

Request Response

When you specify a service in the "Resource" string of your task state, and you only provide the resource, Step Functions will wait for an HTTP response and then progress to the next state. Step Functions will not wait for a job to complete.

The following example shows how you can publish an Amazon SNS topic.

"Send message to SNS":

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Request Response (p. 146)</th>
<th>Run a Job (.sync) (p. 147)</th>
<th>Wait for Callback (.waitForTaskToken) (p. 147)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amazon SageMaker (p. 164)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon EMR (p. 169)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS CodeBuild (p. 177)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS Step Functions (p. 178)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
"Type":"Task",
"Resource":"arn:aws:states:::sns:publish",
"Parameters":{
  "Message":"Hello from Step Functions!"
},
"Next": "NEXT_STATE"
}

This example references the Publish API of Amazon SNS. The workflow progresses to the next state after calling the Publish API.

Run a Job

For integrated services such as AWS Batch and Amazon ECS, Step Functions can wait for a request to complete before progressing to the next state. To have Step Functions wait, specify the "Resource" field in your task state definition with the .sync suffix appended after the resource URI.

For example, when submitting an AWS Batch job, see the "Resource" field in the state machine definition that follows.

"Manage Batch task": {
  "Type": "Task",
  "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::batch:submitJob.sync",
  "Parameters": {
    "JobName": "testJob",
    "JobQueue": "arn:aws:batch:us-east-2:123456789012:job-queue/testQueue"
  },
  "Next": "NEXT_STATE"
}

The .sync portion appended to the resource Amazon Resource Name (ARN) tells Step Functions to wait for the job to complete. After calling AWS Batch submitJob, the workflow pauses. When the job is complete, Step Functions progresses to the next state. For more information, see the AWS Batch sample project: Manage a Batch Job (AWS Batch, Amazon SNS) (p. 186).

To see a list of what integrated services support waiting for a job to complete (.sync), see Supported AWS Service Integrations for Step Functions (p. 153).

Note
Service integrations that use the .sync or .waitForTaskToken patterns require additional IAM permissions. For more information, see IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258).

Wait for a Callback with the Task Token

Callback tasks provide a way to pause a workflow until a task token is returned. A task might need to wait for a human approval, integrate with a third party, or call legacy systems. For tasks like these, you can pause Step Functions indefinitely, and wait for an external process or workflow to complete. For these situations Step Functions allows you to pass a task token to some integrated services. The task will pause until it receives that task token back with a SendTaskSuccess or SendTaskFailure call.

To see a list of what integrated services support waiting for a task token (.waitForTaskToken), see Supported AWS Service Integrations for Step Functions (p. 153).

Note
Service integrations that use the .sync or .waitForTaskToken patterns require additional IAM permissions. For more information, see IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258).
Task Token Example

In this example, a Step Functions workflow needs to integrate with an external microservice to perform a credit check as a part of an approval workflow. Step Functions publishes an Amazon SQS message that includes a task token as a part of the message. An external system integrates with Amazon SQS, and pulls the message off the queue. When that's finished, it returns the result and the original task token. Step Functions then continues with its workflow.

```
"Send message to SQS": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sqs:sendMessage.waitForTaskToken",
    "Parameters": {
        "QueueUrl": "https://sqs.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/123456789012/myQueue",
        "MessageBody": {
            "input": ":
            "taskToken": "$$.Task.Token"
        }
    },
    "Next": "$NEXT_STATE"
}
```

This tells Step Functions to pause and wait for the task token. When you specify a resource using .waitForTaskToken, the task token can be accessed in the "Parameters" field of your state.
definition with a special path designation (```$.Task.Token``). The initial $$ designates that the path accesses the context object (p. 149), and gets the task token for the current task in a running execution.

When it's complete, the external service calls `SendTaskSuccess` or `SendTaskFailure` with the taskToken included. Only then does the workflow continue to the next state.

**Note**
To avoid waiting indefinitely if a process fails to send the task token with `SendTaskSuccess` or `SendTaskFailure`, see [Configure a Heartbeat Timeout for a Waiting Task](p. 150).

### Get a Token from the Context Object

The context object is an internal JSON object that contains information about your execution. Like state input, it can be accessed with a path from the "Parameters" field during an execution. When accessed from within a task definition, it includes information about the specific execution, including the task token.

```json
{
  "Execution": {
    "Id": "arn:aws:states:us-east-1:123456789012:execution:stateMachineName:executionName",
    "Input": {
      "key": "value"
    },
    "Name": "executionName",
    "RoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role...",
    "StartTime": "2019-03-26T20:14:13.192Z"
  },
  "State": {
    "Name": "Test",
    "RetryCount": 3
  },
  "StateMachine": {
    "Id": "arn:aws:states:us-east-1:123456789012:stateMachine:stateMachineName",
    "Name": "name"
  },
  "Task": {
    "Token": "h7XRiCdLtd/83p1E0dMccox1zFhglsdkspK9mBVKZsp7d9yrT1W"
  }
}
```

You can access the task token by using a special path from inside the "Parameters" field of your task definition. To access the input or the context object, you first specify that the parameter will be a path by appending a $. to the parameter name. The following specifies nodes from both the input and the context object in a "Parameters" specification.

```json
"Parameters": {
  "Input.$": "$",
  "TaskToken.$": "$.Task.Token"
},
```

In both cases, appending .$ to the parameter name tells Step Functions to expect a path. In the first case, "$" is a path that includes the entire input. In the second case, $$ specifies that the path will access the context object, and $$$.Task-Token sets the parameter to the value of the task token in the context object of a running execution.

In the Amazon SQS example, `.waitForTaskToken` in the "Resource" field tells Step Functions to wait for the task token to be returned. The "TaskToken.$": "$.Task.Token" parameter passes that token as a part of the Amazon SQS message.
Pass Parameters to a Service API

Use the "Parameters" field in a Task state to control what parameters are passed to a service API.

For more information, see the callback task sample project Callback Pattern Example (Amazon SQS, Amazon SNS, Lambda) (p. 200).
Pass Static JSON as Parameters

You can include a JSON object directly in your state machine definition to pass as a parameter to a resource.

For example, to set the RetryStrategy parameter for the SubmitJob API for AWS Batch, you could include the following in your parameters.

```
"RetryStrategy": {
  "attempts": 5
}
```

You can also pass multiple parameters with static JSON. As a more complete example, the following are the "Resource" and "Parameters" fields of the specification of a task that publishes to an Amazon SNS topic.

```
"Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sns:publish",
"Parameters": {
  "Message": "test message",
  "MessageAttributes": {
    "my attribute no 1": {
      "DataType": "String",
      "StringValue": "value of my attribute no 1"
    },
    "my attribute no 2": {
      "DataType": "String",
      "StringValue": "value of my attribute no 2"
    }
  }
},
```

Pass State Input as Parameters Using Paths

You can pass portions of the state input into parameters by using paths (p. 121). A path is a string, beginning with $, that's used to identify components within JSON text. Step Functions paths use JsonPath syntax.

To specify that a parameter use a path to reference a JSON node in the input, end the parameter name with $. For example, if you have text in your state input in a node named message, you could pass that to a parameter by referencing the input JSON with a path.

Using the following state input.

```
{
  "comment": "A message in the state input",
  "input": {
    "message": "foo",
    "otherInfo": "bar"
  },
  "data": "example"
}
```

You could pass the message foo as a parameter using the following.

```
"Parameters": {"Message.$": "$\.input.message"},
```
For more information about using parameters in Step Functions, see the following:

- Input and Output Processing (p. 120)
- InputPath and Parameters (p. 122)

**Pass Context Object Nodes as Parameters**

In addition to static content, and nodes from the state input, you can pass nodes from the context object as parameters. The context object is dynamic JSON data that exists during a state machine execution. It includes information about your state machine and the current execution. You can access the context object using a path in the "Parameters" field of a state definition.

For more information about the context object and how to access data from a "Parameters" field, see the following:

- Context Object (p. 133)
- Accessing the Context Object (p. 134)
- Get a Token from the Context Object (p. 149)

**Code Snippets**

In AWS Step Functions, code snippets are a way to easily configure the options for a new state in your state machine definition. When you edit or create a state machine, the top of the code pane includes a Generate code snippet menu. Selecting an option from the Generate code snippet menu opens a window to configure parameters specific to that state, and generates Amazon States Language code based on the options you choose.

For example, if you choose the **AWS Batch: Manage a job** code snippet, you can configure the following:

- **Batch job name** – You can either specify the job name, or specify it at runtime using a path.
- **Batch job definition** – You can select the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of an existing AWS Batch job in your account, enter the job definition, or choose to specify it at runtime using a path.
- **Batch job queue** – You can select the ARN of an existing AWS Batch job queue in your account, enter the job queue definition, or choose to specify it at runtime using a path.
- **Run synchronously** – Selecting this option configures Step Functions to wait until the AWS Batch job completes before continuing to the next state.

**Note**

For more information about specifying service parameters, see Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150).

After you configure your AWS Batch options, you can specify error handling options for your state, such as Retry, Catch, and TimeoutSeconds.

For more information, see Error Names (p. 138) in Amazon States Language.

To learn more about Step Functions service integrations, see the following:

- Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144)
- Supported AWS Service Integrations for Step Functions (p. 153)
- Using Code Snippets (p. 66)
Supported AWS Service Integrations for Step Functions

The following topics include the supported APIs, parameters, and request/response syntax in the Amazon States Language for coordinating other AWS services. The topics also provide example code. You can call integrated services directly from the Amazon States Language in the Resource field of a task state.

You can use three service integration patterns:

- Default response (p. 146)
- Wait for a job to complete (`.sync`). (p. 147)
- Wait for a task token (`.waitForTaskToken`). (p. 147)

Standard Workflows and Express Workflows support the same set of service integrations but do not support the same integration patterns. Express Workflows do not support Run a Job (.sync) or Wait for Callback (.waitForTaskToken). For more information, see Standard vs. Express Workflows (p. 89).

Standard Workflows

### Supported Service Integrations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Request Response (p. 146)</th>
<th>Run a Job (.sync) (p. 147)</th>
<th>Wait for Callback (.waitForTaskToken) (p. 147)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lambda (p. 154)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS Batch (p. 156)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DynamoDB (p. 157)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon ECS/AWS Fargate (p. 158)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon SNS (p. 161)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon SQS (p. 162)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS Glue (p. 163)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon SageMaker (p. 164)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon EMR (p. 169)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CodeBuild (p. 177)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS Step Functions (p. 178)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Express Workflows

**Supported Service Integrations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Request Response (p. 146)</th>
<th>Run a Job (.sync) (p. 147)</th>
<th>Wait for Callback (.waitForTaskToken) (p. 147)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lambda (p. 154)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS Batch (p. 156)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DynamoDB (p. 157)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon ECS/AWS Fargate (p. 158)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon SNS (p. 161)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon SQS (p. 162)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS Glue (p. 163)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon SageMaker (p. 164)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon EMR (p. 169)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CodeBuild (p. 177)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step Functions (p. 178)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Invoke Lambda with Step Functions**

Step Functions can control certain AWS services directly from the Amazon States Language. For more information, see the following:

- Service Integrations (p. 144)
- Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150)

For more information about managing state input, output, and results, see Input and Output Processing in Step Functions (p. 120).

Supported AWS Lambda APIs:

- **Invoke**
  - Request Syntax
  - Supported Parameters
    - ClientContext
    - FunctionName
    - InvocationType
    - Qualifier
    - Payload
    - Response syntax

The following includes a Task state that invokes a Lambda function.
The following includes a **Task** state that implements the **callback** (p. 147) service integration pattern.

```
{
  "StartAt":"GetManualReview",
  "States":{
    "GetManualReview":{
      "Type":"Task",
      "Resource":"arn:aws:states:::lambda:invoke.waitForTaskToken",
      "Parameters":{
        "FunctionName":"get-model-review-decision",
        "Payload":{
          "model.$":"$.new_model",
          "token.$":"$$.Task.Token"
        },
        "Qualifier":"prod-v1"
      },
      "End":true
    }
  }
}
```

To invoke a Lambda function, you can also call the resource Amazon Resource Name (ARN) directly in the **Resource** string.

```
{
  "StartAt":"CallFunction",
  "States":{
    "CallFunction":{
      "Type":"Task",
      "End":true
    }
  }
}
```

When you invoke Lambda using an ARN directly from the **Resource** field, you can't specify `.waitForTaskToken`. The state input is passed to Lambda as the payload. The output of the Lambda function is the result. To have a Lambda task wait for a task token, see the previous callback pattern example.

You can invoke a specific Lambda function version or alias by specifying those options in the ARN in the **Resource** field. See the following in the Lambda documentation:

- AWS Lambda versioning
- AWS Lambda aliases
For information on how to configure IAM when using Step Functions with other AWS services, see IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258).

Manage AWS Batch with Step Functions

Step Functions can control certain AWS services directly from the Amazon States Language. For more information, see the following:

- Service Integrations (p. 144)
- Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150)

Supported AWS Batch APIs:

**Note**

Parameters in Step Functions are expressed in **PascalCase**, even when the native service API is **camelCase**.

- SubmitJob
  - Request syntax
  - Supported parameters:
    - `ArrayProperties`
    - `ContainerOverrides`
    - `DependsOn`
    - `JobDefinition`
    - `JobName`
    - `JobQueue`
    - `Parameters`
    - `RetryStrategy`
    - `Timeout`
  - Response syntax

The following includes a **Task** state that submits an AWS Batch job and waits for it to complete.

```
{
  "StartAt": "BATCH_JOB",
  "States": {
    "BATCH_JOB": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::batch:submitJob.sync",
      "Parameters": {
        "JobDefinition": "preprocessing",
        "JobName": "PreprocessingBatchJob",
        "JobQueue": "SecondaryQueue",
        "Parameters.$": "$.batchjob.parameters",
        "ContainerOverrides": {
          "Vcpus": 4
        }
      },
      "End": true
    }
  }
}
```

For information on how to configure IAM when using Step Functions with other AWS services, see IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258).
Call DynamoDB APIs with Step Functions

Step Functions can control certain AWS services directly from the Amazon States Language. For more information, see the following:

- Service Integrations (p. 144)
- Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150)

**Note**
There is a quota for the maximum input or result data size for a task in Step Functions. This restricts you to 32,768 characters of data when you send to, or receive data from, another service. See Quotas Related to State Machine Executions (p. 243).

Supported Amazon DynamoDB APIs and syntax:

- **.GetItem**
  - Request syntax
  - Supported parameters:
    - Key
    - TableName
    - AttributesToGet
    - ConsistentRead
    - ExpressionAttributeNames
    - ProjectionExpression
    - ReturnConsumedCapacity
  - Response syntax
- **PutItem**
  - Request syntax
  - Supported parameters:
    - Item
    - TableName
    - ConditionalOperator
    - ConditionExpression
    - Expected
    - ExpressionAttributeNames
    - ExpressionAttributeValue
    - ReturnConsumedCapacity
    - ReturnItemCollectionMetrics
    - ReturnValues
  - Response syntax
- **DeleteItem**
  - Request syntax
  - Supported parameters:
    - Key
    - TableName
    - ConditionalOperator
    - ConditionExpression
    - Expected
Supported AWS Services

- ExpressionAttributeNames
- ExpressionAttributeValues
- ReturnConsumedCapacity
- ReturnItemCollectionMetrics
- ReturnValues
- Response syntax
- UpdateItem
- Request syntax

Supported parameters:
- Key
- TableName
- AttributeUpdates
- ConditionalOperator
- ConditionExpression
- Expected
- ExpressionAttributeNames
- ExpressionAttributeValues
- ReturnConsumedCapacity
- ReturnItemCollectionMetrics
- ReturnValues
- UpdateExpression
- Response syntax

The following is a Task state that retrieves a message from DynamoDB.

```
"Read Next Message from DynamoDB": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::dynamodb:getItem",
    "Parameters": {
        "TableName": "TransferDataRecords-DDBTable-3I41R5L5EAGT",
        "Key": {
            "MessageId": "$.List[0]"
        }
    },
    "ResultPath": "$.DynamoDB",
    "Next": "Send Message to SQS"
},
```

**Note**
You cannot pass a map or list to DynamoDB inside a map.

To see this state in a working example, see the Transfer Data Records (Lambda, DynamoDB, Amazon SQS) (p. 192) sample project.

For information on how to configure IAM when using Step Functions with other AWS services, see IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258).

**Manage Amazon ECS or Fargate Tasks with Step Functions**

Step Functions can control certain AWS services directly from the Amazon States Language. For more information, see the following:
• Service Integrations (p. 144)
• Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150)

Supported Amazon ECS/Fargate APIs and syntax:

**Note**
Parameters in Step Functions are expressed in **PascalCase**, even when the native service API is **camelCase**.

• **RunTask** starts a new task using the specified task definition.
• Request syntax
• Supported parameters:
  • Cluster
  • Group
  • LaunchType
  • NetworkConfiguration
  • Overrides
  • PlacementConstraints
  • PlacementStrategy
  • PlatformVersion
  • PropagateTags
  • TaskDefinition
• Response syntax

**Note**
For the **Overrides** parameter, Step Functions does not support `executionRoleArn` or `taskRoleArn` as `ContainerOverrides`.

**Passing Data to an Amazon ECS Task**

Step Functions can control certain AWS services directly from the Amazon States Language. For more information, see the following:

• Service Integrations (p. 144)
• Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150)

You can use **overrides** to override the default command for a container, and pass input to your Amazon ECS tasks. See `ContainerOverride`. In the example, we have used JsonPath to pass values to the Task from the input to the Task state.

The following includes a Task state that runs an Amazon ECS task and waits for it to complete.

```json
{
  "StartAt": "Run an ECS Task and wait for it to complete",
  "States": {
    "Run an ECS Task and wait for it to complete": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::ecs:runTask.sync",
      "Parameters": {
        "Cluster": "cluster-arn",
        "TaskDefinition": "job-id",
        "Overrides": {
          "ContainerOverrides": [
        
```
The "Command.$": "$.commands" line in Container Overrides passes the commands from the state input to the container.

For the previous example, each of the commands will be passed as a container override if the input to the execution is the following.

```json
{
  "commands": [
    "test command 1",
    "test command 2",
    "test command 3"
  ]
}
```

The following includes a Task state that runs an Amazon ECS task, and then waits for the task token to be returned. See Wait for a Callback with the Task Token (p. 147).

```json
{
  "StartAt": "Manage ECS task",
  "States": {
    "Manage ECS task": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::ecs:runTask.waitForTaskToken",
      "Parameters": {
        "LaunchType": "FARGATE",
        "Cluster": "cluster-arn",
        "TaskDefinition": "job-id",
        "Overrides": {
          "ContainerOverrides": [
            {
              "Name": "container-name",
              "Environment": [
                {
                  "Name": "TASK_TOKEN_ENV_VARIABLE",
                  "Value.$": "$$.Task.Token"
                }
              ]
            }
          ]
        }
      },
      "End": true
    }
  }
}
```

For information on how to configure IAM when using Step Functions with other AWS services, see IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258).
Call Amazon SNS with Step Functions

Step Functions can control certain AWS services directly from the Amazon States Language. For more information, see the following:

- Service Integrations (p. 144)
- Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150)

Supported Amazon SNS APIs:

**Note**
There is a quota for the maximum input or result data size for a task in Step Functions. This restricts you to 32,768 characters of data when you send to, or receive data from, another service. See Quotas Related to State Machine Executions (p. 243).

- Publish
- Request syntax
- Supported Parameters
  - Message
  - MessageAttributes
  - MessageStructure
  - PhoneNumber
  - Subject
  - TargetArn
  - TopicArn
- Response syntax

The following includes a Task state that publishes to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.

```json
{
    "StartAt": "Publish to SNS",
    "States": {
        "Publish to SNS": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sns:publish",
            "Parameters": {
                "Message.$": ".input.message",
                "MessageAttributes": {
                    "my attribute no 1": {
                        "DataType": "String",
                        "StringValue": "value of my attribute no 1"
                    },
                    "my attribute no 2": {
                        "DataType": "String",
                        "StringValue": "value of my attribute no 2"
                    }
                }
            }
        },
        "End": true
    }
}
```
The following includes a Task state that publishes to an Amazon SNS topic, and then waits for the task token to be returned. See Wait for a Callback with the Task Token (p. 147).

```
"States": {
  "Send message to SNS": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sns:publish.waitForTaskToken",
    "Parameters": {
      "Message": {
        "Input.$": ",
        "TaskToken.$": ".Task.Token"
      }
    },
    "End": true
  }
}
```

For information on how to configure IAM when using Step Functions with other AWS services, see IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258).

## Call Amazon SQS with Step Functions

Step Functions can control certain AWS services directly from the Amazon States Language. For more information, see the following:

- Service Integrations (p. 144)
- Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150)

### Supported Amazon SQS APIs:

**Note**

There is a quota for the maximum input or result data size for a task in Step Functions. This restricts you to 32,768 characters of data when you send to, or receive data from, another service. See Quotas Related to State Machine Executions (p. 243).

- **SendMessage**
  
  **Supported parameters:**
  - **DelaySeconds**
  - **MessageAttribute**
  - **MessageBody**
  - **MessageDeduplicationId**
  - **MessageGroupId**
  - **QueueUrl**
  - **Response syntax**

The following includes a Task state that sends an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) message.

```
"States": {
  "Send to SQS": {
```

162
The following includes a Task state that publishes to an Amazon SQS queue, and then waits for the task token to be returned. See Wait for a Callback with the Task Token (p. 147).

```
{
  "StartAt":"Send message to SQS",
  "States":{
    "Send message to SQS":{
      "Type":"Task",
      "Resource":"arn:aws:states:::sqs:sendMessage.waitForTaskToken",
      "Parameters":{
        "QueueUrl":"https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/123456789012/myQueue",
        "MessageBody":{
          "Input.$":"$",
          "TaskToken.$":"$$.Task.Token"
        }
      },
      "End":true
    }
  }
}
```

To learn more about receiving messages in Amazon SQS, see Receive and Delete Your Message in the Amazon Simple Queue Service Developer Guide.

For information on how to configure IAM when using Step Functions with other AWS services, see IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258).

**Manage AWS Glue Jobs with Step Functions**

Step Functions can control certain AWS services directly from the Amazon States Language. For more information, see the following:

- Service Integrations (p. 144)
- Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150)

Supported AWS Glue APIs:

- StartJobRun
- Supported Parameters:
• JobName
• JobRunId
• Arguments
• AllocatedCapacity
• Timeout
• SecurityConfiguration
• NotificationProperty

The following includes a Task state that starts an AWS Glue job.

```
"Glue StartJobRun": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::glue:startJobRun.sync",
    "Parameters": {
        "JobName": "GlueJob-JTrR05198gMG"
    },
    "Next": "ValidateOutput"
}
```

For information on how to configure IAM when using Step Functions with other AWS services, see IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258).

**Manage Amazon SageMaker with Step Functions**

Step Functions can control certain AWS services directly from the Amazon States Language. For more information, see the following:

• Service Integrations (p. 144)
• Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150)

Supported Amazon SageMaker APIs and syntax:

• CreateEndpoint
  • Request syntax
  • Supported parameters:
    • EndpointConfigName
    • EndpointName
    • Tags
  • Response syntax
• CreateEndpointConfig
  • Request syntax
  • Supported parameters:
    • EndpointConfigName
    • KmsKeyId
    • ProductionVariants
    • Tags
  • Response syntax
• CreateHyperParameterTuningJob
  • Request syntax
  • Supported parameters:
• HyperParameterTuningJobConfig
• HyperParameterTuningJobName
• Tags
• TrainingJobDefinition
• WarmStartConfig

• Response syntax

• CreateLabelingJob

• Request syntax

• Supported parameters:
  • HumanTaskConfig
  • InputConfig
  • LabelAttributeName
  • LabelCategoryConfigS3Uri
  • LabelingJobAlgorithmsConfig
  • LabelingJobName
  • OutputConfig
  • RoleArn
  • StoppingConditions
  • Tags

• Response syntax

• CreateModel

• Request syntax

• Supported parameters:
  • Containers
  • EnableNetworkIsolation
  • ExecutionRoleArn
  • ModelName
  • PrimaryContainer
  • Tags
  • VpcConfig

• CreateTrainingJob

• Request syntax

• Supported parameters:
  • AlgorithmSpecification
  • HyperParameters
  • InputDataConfig
  • OutputDataConfig
  • ResourceConfig
  • RoleArn
  • StoppingCondition
  • Tags
  • TrainingJobName

• VpcConfig

• Response syntax

• CreateTransformJob
Note
AWS Step Functions will not automatically create a policy for CreateTransformJob. You must attach an inline policy to the created role. For more information, see this example IAM policy: CreateTrainingJob (p. 266).

- Request syntax
- Supported parameters:
  - BatchStrategy
  - Environment
  - MaxConcurrentTransforms
  - MaxPayloadInMB
  - ModelName
  - Tags
  - TransformInput
  - TransformJobName
  - TransformOutput
  - TransformResources
- Response syntax

UpdateEndpoint
- Request syntax
- Supported parameters:
  - EndpointConfigName
  - EndpointName
- Response syntax

Amazon SageMaker Transform Job Example

The following includes a Task state that creates an Amazon SageMaker transform job, specifying the Amazon S3 location for DataSource and TransformOutput.

```json
{
  "SageMaker CreateTransformJob": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sagemaker:createTransformJob.sync",
    "Parameters": {
      "ModelName": "SageMakerCreateTransformJobModel-9iFBKsYti9vr",
      "TransformInput": {
        "CompressionType": "None",
        "ContentType": "text/csv",
        "DataSource": {
          "S3DataSource": {
            "S3DataType": "S3Prefix",
            "S3Uri": "s3://my-s3bucket-example-1/TransformJobDataInput.txt"
          }
        }
      },
      "TransformOutput": {
        "S3OutputPath": "s3://my-s3bucket-example-1/TransformJobOutputPath"
      },
      "TransformResources": {
        "InstanceCount": 1,
        "InstanceType": "ml.m4.xlarge"
      },
      "TransformJobName": "sfn-binary-classification-prediction"
    }
  }
}```
Amazon SageMaker Training Job Example

The following includes a Task state that creates an Amazon SageMaker training job.

```json
{
    "SageMaker_CreateTrainingJob":{
        "Type":"Task",
        "Resource":"arn:aws:states:::sagemaker:createTrainingJob.sync",
        "Parameters":{
            "TrainingJobName":"search-model",
            "ResourceConfig":{
                "InstanceCount":4,
                "InstanceType":"ml.c4.8xlarge",
                "VolumeSizeInGB":20
            },
            "HyperParameters":{
                "mode":"batch_skipgram",
                "epochs":"5",
                "min_count":"5",
                "sampling_threshold":"0.0001",
                "learning_rate":"0.025",
                "window_size":"5",
                "vector_dim":"300",
                "negative_samples":"5",
                "batch_size":"11"
            },
            "AlgorithmSpecification":{
                "TrainingImage":"...",
                "TrainingInputMode":"File"
            },
            "OutputDataConfig":{
                "S3OutputPath":"s3://bucket-name/doc-search/model"
            },
            "StoppingCondition":{
                "MaxRuntimeInSeconds":100000
            },
            "RoleArn":"arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/docsearch-stepfunction-iam-role",
            "InputDataConfig":{
                "ChannelName":"train",
                "DataSource":{
                    "S3DataSource":{
                        "S3DataType":"S3Prefix",
                        "S3Uri":"s3://bucket-name/doc-search/interim-data/training-data/",
                        "S3DataDistributionType":"FullyReplicated"
                    }
                }
            }
        },
        "Retry":[
            {
                "ErrorEquals":[
                    "SageMaker.AmazonSageMakerException"
                ],
                "IntervalSeconds":1,
                "MaxAttempts":100,
                "BackoffRate":0.1
            }
        ],
        "ErrorEquals":[]
    }
}
```
Amazon SageMaker Labeling Job Example

The following includes a Task state that creates an Amazon SageMaker labeling job.

```json
{
  "StartAt": "SageMaker CreateLabelingJob",
  "TimeoutSeconds": 3600,
  "States": {
    "SageMaker CreateLabelingJob": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sagemaker:createLabelingJob.sync",
      "Parameters": {
        "HumanTaskConfig": {
          "AnnotationConsolidationConfig": {
          },
          "NumberOfHumanWorkersPerDataObject": 1,
          "TaskDescription": "Classify the following text",
          "TaskKeywords": ["tc", "Labeling"],
          "TaskTimeLimitInSeconds": 300,
          "TaskTitle": "Classify short bits of text",
          "UiConfig": {
            "UiTemplateS3Uri": "s3://s3bucket-example/TextClassification.template"
          },
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```
Call Amazon EMR with Step Functions

Step Functions can control certain AWS services directly from the Amazon States Language. For more information, see the following:

- Service Integrations (p. 144)
- Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150)
To integrate AWS Step Functions with Amazon EMR, you use the provided Amazon EMR service integration APIs. The service integration APIs are similar to the corresponding Amazon EMR APIs, with some differences in the fields that are passed and in the responses that are returned.

**Note**

As of `emr-5.28.0`, you can specify the parameter `StepConcurrencyLevel` when creating a cluster to allow multiple steps to run in parallel on a single cluster. You can use the Step Functions `Map` and `Parallel` states to submit work in parallel to the cluster.

The availability of EMR service integration is subject to the availability of EMR APIs. Please check the Amazon EMR documentation for limitations in special regions.

The following table describes the differences between each service integration API and its corresponding Amazon EMR API.

### Amazon EMR Service Integration APIs and Corresponding Amazon EMR APIs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amazon EMR Service Integration API</th>
<th>Corresponding EMR API</th>
<th>Differences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>createCluster</code></td>
<td><code>runJobFlow</code></td>
<td><code>createCluster</code> uses the same request syntax as <code>runJobFlow</code>, except for the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The field <code>Instances.KeepJobFlowAliveWhenNoSteps</code> is mandatory, and must have the Boolean value <code>TRUE</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The field <code>Steps</code> is not allowed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The field <code>Instances.InstanceFleets[index].Name</code> should be provided and must be unique if the optional <code>modifyInstanceFleetByName</code> connector API is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The field <code>Instances.InstanceGroups[index].Name</code> should be provided and must be unique if the optional <code>modifyInstanceGroupByName</code> API is used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Response is this:

```json
{
  "ClusterId": "string"
}
```

Amazon EMR uses this:

```json
{
  "JobFlowId": "string"
}
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amazon EMR Service Integration API</th>
<th>Corresponding EMR API</th>
<th>Differences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>createCluster.sync</code></td>
<td><code>runJobFlow</code></td>
<td>The same as <code>createCluster</code>, but waits for the cluster to reach the <code>WAITING</code> state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>setClusterTerminationProtection</code></td>
<td><code>setTerminationProtection</code></td>
<td>Request uses this:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>{ &quot;ClusterId&quot;: &quot;string&quot; }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon EMR uses this:</td>
<td></td>
<td><code>{ &quot;JobFlowIds&quot;: [&quot;string&quot;] }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>terminateCluster</code></td>
<td><code>terminateJobFlows</code></td>
<td>Request uses this:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><code>{ &quot;ClusterId&quot;: &quot;string&quot; }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon EMR uses this:</td>
<td></td>
<td><code>{ &quot;JobFlowIds&quot;: [&quot;string&quot;] }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>terminateCluster.sync</code></td>
<td><code>terminateJobFlows</code></td>
<td>The same as <code>terminateCluster</code>, but waits for the cluster to terminate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon EMR Service Integration API</td>
<td>Corresponding EMR API</td>
<td>Differences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>addStep</td>
<td>addJobFlowSteps</td>
<td>Request uses the key “ClusterId”. Amazon EMR uses “JobFlowId”. Request uses a single step.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{ &quot;Step&quot;: &lt;&quot;StepConfig object&quot;&gt; }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amazon EMR uses this:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{ &quot;Steps&quot;: [&lt;StepConfig objects&gt;] }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Response is this:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{ &quot;StepId&quot;: &quot;string&quot; }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amazon EMR returns this:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{ &quot;StepIds&quot;: [&lt;strings&gt;] }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>addStep.sync</td>
<td>addJobFlowSteps</td>
<td>The same as addStep, but waits for the step to complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Adds a new step to a running cluster.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Amazon EMR Service Integration API</th>
<th>Corresponding EMR API</th>
<th>Differences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>cancelStep</code></td>
<td><code>cancelSteps</code></td>
<td>Request uses this:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>`{</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;StepId&quot;: &quot;string&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amazon EMR uses this:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>`{</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;StepIds&quot;: [&quot;strings&quot;]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Response is this:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>`{</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;CancelStepsInfo&quot;:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;CancelStepsInfo object&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amazon EMR uses this:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>`{</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;CancelStepsInfoList&quot;:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[&lt;CancelStepsInfo objects&gt;]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>modifyInstanceFleetByName</code></td>
<td><code>modifyInstanceFleet</code></td>
<td>Request is the same as for <code>modifyInstanceFleet</code>, except for the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The field <code>Instance.InstanceFleetId</code> is not allowed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• At runtime the <code>InstanceFleetId</code> is determined automatically by the service integration by calling <code>ListInstanceFleets</code> and parsing the result.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>modifyInstanceFleetByName</code></td>
<td><code>modifyInstanceFleet</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Modifies the target On-Demand and target Spot capacities for the instance fleet with the specified <code>InstanceFleetName</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon EMR Service Integration API</td>
<td>Corresponding EMR API</td>
<td>Differences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modifyInstanceGroupByName</td>
<td>modifyInstanceGroups</td>
<td>Request is this:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;ClusterId&quot;: &quot;string&quot;,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;InstanceGroup&quot;:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;InstanceGroupModifyConfig object&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amazon EMR uses a list:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>{</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;ClusterId&quot;: [&quot;string&quot;],</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;InstanceGroups&quot;:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[&lt;InstanceGroupModifyConfig objects&gt;]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Within the InstanceGroupModifyConfig object, the field InstanceGroupId is not allowed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A new field, InstanceGroupName, has been added. At runtime the InstanceGroupId is determined automatically by the service integration by calling ListInstanceGroups and parsing the result.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following includes a Task state that creates a cluster.

```
"Create_Cluster": { 
   "Type": "Task", 
   "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::elasticmapreduce:createCluster.sync", 
   "Parameters": { 
       "Name": "MyWorkflowCluster", 
       "VisibleToAllUsers": true, 
       "ReleaseLabel": "emr-5.28.0", 
       "Applications": [ 
           { 
               "Name": "Hive" 
           } 
       ], 
       "ServiceRole": "EMR_DefaultRole", 
       "JobFlowRole": "EMR_EC2_DefaultRole", 
       "LogUri": "s3n://aws-logs-123456789012-us-east-1/elasticmapreduce/", 
       "Instances": { 
           "KeepJobFlowAliveWhenNoSteps": true, 
           "InstanceFleets": [ 
               { 
                   "InstanceFleetType": "MASTER", 
                   "Name": "MASTER", 
               } 
           ] 
       } 
   } 
} 
```
The following includes a Task state that enables termination protection.

```
"Enable_Termination_Protection": {
  "Type": "Task",
  "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::elasticmapreduce:setClusterTerminationProtection",
  "Parameters": {
    "ClusterId.$": ".$.ClusterId",
    "TerminationProtected": true
  },
  "End": true
}
```

The following includes a Task state that submits a step to a cluster.

```
"Step_One": {
  "Type": "Task",
  "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::elasticmapreduce:addStep.sync",
  "Parameters": {
    "ClusterId.$": ".$.ClusterId",
    "Step": {
      "Name": "The first step",
      "ActionOnFailure": "CONTINUE",
      "HadoopJarStep": {
        "Jar": "command-runner.jar",
        "Args": [
          "hive-script",
          "--run-hive-script",
          "--args",
          "-f",
          "s3://<region>.elasticmapreduce.samples/cloudfront/code/Hive_CloudFront.q",
          "-d",
          "INPUT=s3://<region>.elasticmapreduce.samples",
          "-d",
          "OUTPUT=s3://<mybucket>/MyHiveQueryResults/"
        ]
      }
    }
  },
  "End": true
}
```
The following includes a Task state that cancels a step.

```
"Cancel_Step_One": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::elasticmapreduce:cancelStep",
    "Parameters": {
        "ClusterId.$": "$ClusterId",
        "StepId.$": "$AddStepsResult.StepId"
    },
    "End": true
}
```

The following includes a Task state that terminates a cluster.

```
"Terminate_Cluster": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::elasticmapreduce:terminateCluster.sync",
    "Parameters": {
        "ClusterId.$": "$ClusterId"
    },
    "End": true
}
```

The following includes a Task state that scales a cluster up or down for an instance group.

```
"ModifyInstanceGroupByName": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::elasticmapreduce:modifyInstanceGroupByName",
    "Parameters": {
        "ClusterId": "j-1234567890123",
        "InstanceGroupName": "MyCoreGroup",
        "InstanceGroup": {
            "InstanceCount": 8
        }
    },
    "End": true
}
```

The following includes a Task state that scales a cluster up or down for an instance fleet.

```
"ModifyInstanceFleetByName": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::elasticmapreduce:modifyInstanceFleetByName",
    "Parameters": {
        "ClusterId": "j-1234567890123",
        "InstanceFleetName": "MyCoreFleet",
        "InstanceFleet": {
            "TargetOnDemandCapacity": 8,
            "TargetSpotCapacity": 0
        }
    },
    "End": true
}
```

For information on how to configure IAM when using Step Functions with other AWS services, see IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258).
Call AWS CodeBuild with Step Functions

Step Functions can control certain AWS services directly from the Amazon States Language. For more information, see the following:

- Service Integrations (p. 144)
- Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150)

The AWS Step Functions service integration with AWS CodeBuild enables you to use Step Functions to trigger, stop, and manage builds, and to share build reports. Using Step Functions, you can design and run continuous integration pipelines for validating your software changes for applications.

Not all APIs support all integration patterns, as shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>API</th>
<th>Request Response</th>
<th>Run a Job (.sync)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>StartBuild</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StopBuild</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BatchDeleteBuilds</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BatchGetReports</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Supported CodeBuild APIs and syntax:

- **StartBuild**
  - Request syntax
  - Supported parameters:
    - projectName
    - artifactsOverride
    - buildspecOverride
    - cacheOverride
    - certificateOverride
    - computeTypeOverride
    - encryptionKeyOverride
    - environmentTypeOverride
    - environmentVariablesOverride
    - gitCloneDepthOverride
    - gitSubmodulesConfigOverride
    - idempotencyToken
    - imageOverride
    - imagePullCredentialsTypeOverride
    - insecureSslOverride
    - logsConfigOverride
    - privilegedModeOverride
    - queuedTimeoutInMinutesOverride
    - registryCredentialOverride
    - reportBuildStatusOverride
    - secondaryArtifactsOverride
- secondarySourcesOverride
- secondarySourcesVersionOverride
- serviceRoleOverride
- sourceAuthOverride
- sourceLocationOverride
- sourceTypeOverride
- sourceVersion
- timeoutInMinutesOverride

**Response syntax**

**StopBuild**

**Request syntax**

**Supported parameters:**
- id

**Response syntax**

**BatchDeleteBuilds**

**Request syntax**

**Supported parameters:**
- ids

**Response syntax**

**BatchGetReports**

**Request syntax**

**Supported parameters:**
- reportArns

**Response syntax**

**Note**

You can use the JSONPath recursive descent (..) operator for BatchDeleteBuilds. This returns an array, and enables you to turn the Arn field from StartBuild into a plural Ids parameter, as shown in the following example.

```
"BatchDeleteBuilds": {
  "Type": "Task",
  "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::codebuild:batchDeleteBuilds",
  "Parameters": {
    "Ids.$": "$.Build.Arn"
  },
  "Next": "MyNextState"
},
```

**Manage AWS Step Functions Executions as an Integrated Service**

Step Functions integrates with its own API as a service integration. This allows Step Functions to start a new execution of a state machine directly from the task state of a running execution. When building new workflows, use nested workflow executions (p. 136) to reduce the complexity of your main workflows and to reuse common processes.

For more information, see the following:
- Start Executions from a Task (p. 136)
- Service Integrations (p. 144)
• **Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150)**

**Supported Step Functions APIs and syntax:**

- **StartExecution**
  - **Request Syntax**
  - **Supported Parameters**
    - `input`
    - `name`
    - `stateMachineArn`
  - **Response syntax**

The following includes a **Task** state that starts an execution of another state machine and waits for it to complete.

```json
{
  "Type": "Task",
  "Parameters": {
    "Input": {
      "Comment": "Hello world!"
    },
    "Name": "ExecutionName"
  },
  "End": true
}
```

The following includes a **Task** state that starts an execution of another state machine.

```json
{
  "Type": "Task",
  "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::states:startExecution",
  "Parameters": {
    "Input": {
      "Comment": "Hello world!"
    },
    "Name": "ExecutionName"
  },
  "End": true
}
```

The following includes a **Task** state that implements the **callback (p. 147)** service integration pattern.

```json
{
  "Type": "Task",
  "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::states:startExecution.waitForTaskToken",
  "Parameters": {
    "Input": {
      "Comment": "Hello world!",
      "token.$": "$$.Task.Token"
    },
    "Name": "ExecutionName"
  },
  "End": true
}
```
To associate a nested workflow execution with the parent execution that started it, pass a specially named parameter that includes the execution ID pulled from the context object (p. 133). When starting a nested execution, use a parameter named `AWS_STEP_FUNCTIONS_STARTED_BY_EXECUTION_ID`. Pass the execution ID by appending `.$` to the parameter name, and referencing the ID in the context object with `$$.Execution.Id`. For more information, see Accessing the Context Object (p. 134).

```json
{
  "Type": "Task",
  "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::states:startExecution.sync",
  "Parameters": {
    "Input": {
      "Comment": "Hello world!",
      "AWS_STEP_FUNCTIONS_STARTED_BY_EXECUTION_ID.$": "$$.Execution.Id"
    },
    "Name": "ExecutionName"
  },
  "End": true
}
```

Nested state machines return the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource</th>
<th>Output</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>startExecution.sync</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>startExecution.sync:2</td>
<td>JSON</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Both will wait for the nested state machine to complete, but they return different output formats. For example, if you create a Lambda function that returns the object `{ "MyKey": "MyValue" }`, you would get the following responses:

For `startExecution.sync`:

```json
{
  <other fields>
  "Output": "{ "MyKey": "MyValue" }"
}
```

For `startExecution.sync:2`:

```json
{
  <other fields>
  "Output": {
    "MyKey": "MyValue"
  }
}
```

For information on how to configure IAM when using Step Functions with other AWS services, see IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258).
Read Consistency in Step Functions

State machine updates in AWS Step Functions are eventually consistent. All StartExecution calls within a few seconds will use the updated definition and roleArn (the Amazon Resource Name for the IAM role). Executions started immediately after calling UpdateStateMachine might use the previous state machine definition and roleArn.

For more information, see the following:

- UpdateStateMachine in the AWS Step Functions API Reference
- Update a State Machine (p. 15) in Getting Started with Step Functions (p. 13)

Templates in Step Functions

In the Step Functions console, you can choose one of the following state machine templates to automatically fill the Code pane. Each of the templates is fully functional and you can use any blueprint as the template for your own state machine.

Note
Choosing any of the templates overwrites the contents of the Code pane.

- Hello world – A state machine with a Pass state.
- Wait state – A state machine that demonstrates different ways of injecting a Wait state into a running state machine:
  - By waiting for a number of seconds.
  - By waiting for an absolute time (timestamp).
  - By specifying the Wait state's definition.
  - By using the state's input data.
- Retry failure – A state machine that retries a task after the task fails. This blueprint demonstrates how to handle multiple retries and various failure types.
- Parallel – A state machine that demonstrates how to execute two branches at the same time.
- Catch failure – A state machine that performs a different task after its primary task fails. This blueprint demonstrates how to call different tasks depending on the failure type.
- Choice state – A state machine that makes a choice: It either runs a Task state from a set of Task states or runs a Fail state after the initial state is complete.
- Map state – A state machine that uses a map state to dynamically process the data in an array.

Tagging in Step Functions

AWS Step Functions supports tagging of state machines (both Standard and Express) and activities. This can help you track and manage the costs associated with your resources, and provide better security in your AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policies. Tagging Step Functions resources allows them to be managed by AWS Resource Groups. For more information on Resource Groups, see the AWS Resource Groups User Guide.

To review the restrictions related to resource tagging, see Restrictions Related to Tagging (p. 250).

Topics
- Tagging for Cost Allocation (p. 182)
- Tagging for Security (p. 182)
Tagging for Cost Allocation

To organize and identify your Step Functions resources for cost allocation, you can add metadata tags that identify the purpose of a state machine or activity. This is especially useful when you have many resources. You can use cost allocation tags to organize your AWS bill to reflect your own cost structure. To do this, sign up to get your AWS account bill to include the tag keys and values. For more information, see Setting Up a Monthly Cost Allocation Report in the AWS Billing and Cost Management User Guide.

For example, you could add tags that represent the cost center and purpose of your Step Functions resources, as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource</th>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>StateMachine1</td>
<td>Cost Center</td>
<td>34567</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>Image processing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StateMachine2</td>
<td>Cost Center</td>
<td>34567</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>Rekognition processing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activity1</td>
<td>Cost Center</td>
<td>12345</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>Legacy database</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This tagging scheme allows you to group two state machines performing related tasks in the same cost center, while tagging an unrelated activity with a different cost allocation tag.

Tagging for Security

IAM supports controlling access to resources based on tags. To control access based on tags, provide information about your resource tags in the condition element of an IAM policy.

For example, you could restrict access to all Step Functions resources that include a tag with the key environment and the value production.

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Deny",
            "Action": [
                "states:TagResource",
                "states:DeleteActivity",
                "states:DeleteStateMachine",
                "states:StopExecution"
            ],
            "Resource": "*",
            "Condition": {
                "StringEquals": {
                    "aws:ResourceTag/environment": "production"
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```
For more information, see Controlling Access Using Tags in the IAM User Guide.

**Viewing and Managing Tags in the Step Functions Console**

Step Functions allows you to view and manage the tags for your state machines in the Step Functions console. From the Details page of a state machine, select Tags. Here, you can view the existing tags associated with your state machine.

**Note**
To manage tags for activities, see Manage Tags with Step Functions API Actions (p. 183).

To add or delete tags that are associated with your state machine, select the Manage Tags button.

1. Browse to the details page of a state machine.
2. Select Tags, next to Executions and Definition.
3. Choose Manage tags.
   - To modify existing tags, edit the Key and Value.
   - To remove existing tags, choose Remove tag.
   - To add a new tag, choose Add tag and enter a Key and Value.
4. Choose Save.

**Manage Tags with Step Functions API Actions**

To manage tags using the Step Functions API, use the following API actions:

- ListTagsForResource
- TagResource
- UntagResource

**AWS Step Functions Data Science SDK for Python**

The AWS Step Functions Data Science SDK is an open source library that allows data scientists to easily create workflows that process and publish machine learning models using Amazon SageMaker and Step Functions. You can create multi-step machine learning workflows in Python that orchestrate AWS infrastructure at scale, without having to provision and integrate the AWS services separately.

The AWS Step Functions Data Science SDK provides a Python API that can create and invoke Step Functions workflows. You can manage and execute these workflows directly in Python, and in Jupyter notebooks.

In addition to creating production-ready workflows directly in Python, the AWS Step Functions Data Science SDK allows you to copy that workflow, experiment with new options, and then put the refined workflow in production.

For more information about the AWS Step Functions Data Science SDK, see the following:

- Project on Github
- SDK documentation
- The following Example notebooks, which are available in Jupyter notebook instances in the Amazon SageMaker console and the related GitHub project:
AWS Step Functions and AWS SAM

You can use the AWS SAM CLI in conjunction with the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio Code as part of an integrated experience to create state machines locally. You can build a serverless application with AWS SAM, then build out your state machine in the VS Code IDE. After you’ve done that, you can validate, package, and deploy your resources. Optionally, you can publish to the AWS Serverless Application Repository.

Why use Step Functions with AWS SAM?

When you use Step Functions with AWS SAM you can:

• Get started in minutes using a AWS SAM sample template.
• Build your state machine into your serverless application.
• Use variable substitution to substitute ARNs into your state machine at time of deployment.
• Simplify specifying your state machine role using AWS SAM policy templates.
• Trigger state machine executions with API Gateway, EventBridge events, or on a schedule within your AWS SAM template.

Step Functions integration with the AWS SAM specification

You can use the AWS SAM Policy Templates available to easily add permissions to your state machine. These enable you to orchestrate Lambda functions and other AWS resources to form complex and robust workflows.

Step Functions integration with the SAM CLI

Step Functions is integrated with the AWS SAM CLI. Use this to quickly develop a state machine into your serverless application.

Try the Create a Step Functions State Machine Using AWS SAM (p. 83) tutorial to learn how to use AWS SAM to create state machines.

Supported AWS SAM CLI functions include:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLI Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sam init</td>
<td>Initializes a Serverless Application with an AWS SAM template. Can be used with a SAM template for Step Functions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sam validate</td>
<td>Validates an AWS SAM template.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sam package</td>
<td>Packages an AWS SAM application. It creates a ZIP file of your code and dependencies, and uploads it to Amazon S3. It then returns a copy of your AWS SAM template, replacing references to local artifacts with the Amazon S3 location where the command uploaded the artifacts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Why use Step Functions with AWS SAM?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLI Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sam deploy</td>
<td>Deploys an AWS SAM application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sam publish</td>
<td>Publish an AWS SAM application to the AWS Serverless Application Repository. This command takes a packaged AWS SAM template and publishes the application to the specified region.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

Using AWS SAM local you can emulate Lambda and API Gateway locally. However, you cannot emulate Step Functions locally using AWS SAM.

To learn more, see the following:

- Go through a step-by-step tutorial [Create a Step Functions State Machine Using AWS SAM (p. 83)](#).
- Specify a `AWS::Serverless::StateMachine` resource.
- Find [AWS SAM Policy Templates](#) to use.
- Use [AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio with Step Functions](#)
- The [AWS SAM CLI reference](#)
Sample Projects for Step Functions

In the AWS Step Functions console, you can choose one of the following state machine sample projects to automatically create the state machine Code, Visual Workflow, and all related AWS resources for the project.

Each of the sample projects provisions a fully functional state machine, and creates the related resources for it to run. When you create a sample project, Step Functions uses AWS CloudFormation to create the related resources referenced by the state machine.

Topics

- Manage a Batch Job (AWS Batch, Amazon SNS) (p. 186)
- Manage a Container Task (Amazon ECS, Amazon SNS) (p. 189)
- Transfer Data Records (Lambda, DynamoDB, Amazon SQS) (p. 192)
- Poll for Job Status (Lambda, AWS Batch) (p. 196)
- Task Timer (Lambda, Amazon SNS) (p. 198)
- Callback Pattern Example (Amazon SQS, Amazon SNS, Lambda) (p. 200)
- Manage an Amazon EMR Job (p. 203)
- Start a Workflow within a Workflow (Step Functions, Lambda) (p. 207)
- Dynamically Process Data with a Map State (p. 209)
- Train a Machine Learning Model (p. 214)
- Tune a Machine Learning Model (p. 219)
- Process High-Volume Messages from Amazon SQS (Express Workflows) (p. 225)
- Selective Checkpointing Example (Express Workflows) (p. 229)
- Build an AWS CodeBuild Project (CodeBuild, Amazon SNS) (p. 236)

Manage a Batch Job (AWS Batch, Amazon SNS)

This sample project demonstrates how to submit an AWS Batch job, and then send an Amazon SNS notification based on whether that job succeeds or fails. Deploying this sample project creates an AWS Step Functions state machine, an AWS Batch job, and an Amazon SNS topic.

In this project, Step Functions uses a state machine to call the AWS Batch job synchronously. It then waits for the job to succeed or fail, and it sends an Amazon SNS topic with a message about whether the job succeeded or failed.

Create the State Machine and Provision Resources

1. Open the Step Functions console and choose Create a state machine.
2. Choose Sample Projects, and then choose Manage a Batch Job.

The state machine Code and Visual Workflow are displayed.
3. Choose **Next**.

The **Deploy resources** page is displayed, listing the resources that will be created. For this sample project, the resources include:

- An AWS Batch job
- An Amazon SNS topic

4. Choose **Deploy Resources**.

**Note**

It can take up to 10 minutes for these resources and related IAM permissions to be created. While the **Deploy resources** page is displayed, you can open the **Stack ID** link to see which resources are being provisioned.

### Start a New Execution

1. On the **New execution** page, enter an execution name (optional), and then choose **Start Execution**.

2. (Optional) To help identify your execution, you can specify an ID for it in the **Enter an execution name** box. If you don't enter an ID, Step Functions generates a unique ID automatically.

   **Note**

   Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

3. Optionally, you can go to the newly created state machine on the Step Functions **Dashboard**, and then choose **New execution**.

4. When an execution is complete, you can select states on the **Visual workflow** and browse the **Input** and **Output** under **Step details**.

### Example State Machine Code

The state machine in this sample project integrates with AWS Batch and Amazon SNS by passing parameters directly to those resources.

Browse through this example state machine to see how Step Functions controls AWS Batch and Amazon SNS by connecting to the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) in the **Resource** field, and by passing **Parameters** to the service API.
For more information about how AWS Step Functions can control other AWS services, see Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144).

```json
{
    "Comment": "An example of the Amazon States Language for notification on an AWS Batch job completion",
    "StartAt": "Submit Batch Job",
    "TimeoutSeconds": 3600,
    "States": {
        "Submit Batch Job": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::batch:submitJob.sync",
            "Parameters": {
                "JobName": "BatchJobNotification",
                "JobQueue": "arn:aws:batch:us-east-1:123456789012:job-queue/BatchJobQueue-7049d367474b4dd",
                "JobDefinition": "arn:aws:batch:us-east-1:123456789012:job-definition/BatchJobDefinition-74d55ec34c4643c:1"
            },
            "Next": "Notify Success",
            "Catch": [
                {
                    "ErrorEquals": [ "States.ALL" ],
                    "Next": "Notify Failure"
                }
            ]
        },
        "Notify Success": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sns:publish",
            "Parameters": {
                "Message": "Batch job submitted through Step Functions succeeded",
                "TopicArn": "arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:123456789012:batchjobnotificatiointemplate-SNSTopic-1J757CVBQ2KHM"
            },
            "End": true
        },
        "Notify Failure": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sns:publish",
            "Parameters": {
                "Message": "Batch job submitted through Step Functions failed",
                "TopicArn": "arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:123456789012:batchjobnotificatiointemplate-SNSTopic-1J757CVBQ2KHM"
            },
            "End": true
        }
    }
}
```

**IAM Example**

This example AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy generated by the sample project includes the least privilege necessary to execute the state machine and related resources. We recommend that you include only those permissions that are necessary in your IAM policies.

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Action": ["sns:Publish"]
        }
    ]
}
```
Manage a Container Task (Amazon ECS, Amazon SNS)

This sample project demonstrates how to run an AWS Fargate task, and then send an Amazon SNS notification based on whether that job succeeds or fails. Deploying this sample project will create an AWS Step Functions state machine, a Fargate cluster, and an Amazon SNS topic.

In this project, Step Functions uses a state machine to call the Fargate task synchronously. It then waits for the task to succeed or fail, and it sends an Amazon SNS topic with a message about whether the job succeeded or failed.

Create the State Machine and Provision Resources

1. Open the Step Functions console and choose Create a state machine.
2. Choose Sample Projects, and then choose Manage a container task.

   The state machine Code and Visual Workflow are displayed.
3. Choose **Next**.

The **Deploy resources** page is displayed, listing the resources that will be created. For this sample project the resources include:

- A Fargate cluster
- An Amazon SNS topic

4. Choose **Deploy Resources**.

**Note**
It can take up to 10 minutes for these resources and related IAM permissions to be created. While the **Deploy resources** page is displayed, you can open the **Stack ID** link to see which resources are being provisioned.

**Start a New Execution**

1. On the **New execution** page, enter an execution name (optional), and then choose **Start Execution**.

2. (Optional) To help identify your execution, you can specify an ID for it in the **Enter an execution name** box. If you don't enter an ID, Step Functions generates a unique ID automatically.

**Note**
Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

3. Optionally, you can go to the newly created state machine on the Step Functions **Dashboard**, and then choose **New execution**.

4. When an execution is complete, you can select states on the **Visual workflow** and browse the **Input** and **Output** under **Step details**.

**Example State Machine Code**

The state machine in this sample project integrates with AWS Fargate and Amazon SNS by passing parameters directly to those resources. Browse through this example state machine to see how Step Functions uses a state machine to call the Fargate task synchronously, waits for the task to succeed or fail, and sends an Amazon SNS topic with a message about whether the job succeeded or failed.

For more information about how AWS Step Functions can control other AWS services, see **Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions** (p. 144).
IAM Example

This example AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy generated by the sample project includes the least privilege necessary to execute the state machine and related resources. It's a best practice to include only those permissions that are necessary in your IAM policies.

```json
{
    "Comment": "An example of the Amazon States Language for notification on an AWS Fargate task completion",
    "StartAt": "Run Fargate Task",
    "TimeoutSeconds": 3600,
    "States": {
        "Run Fargate Task": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::ecs:runTask.sync",
            "Parameters": {
                "LaunchType": "FARGATE",
                "TaskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:ap-northeast-1:123456789012:task-definition/FargateTaskNotification-ECSTaskDefinition-13YOJT8ZLY5Q:1",
                "NetworkConfiguration": {
                    "AwsvpcConfiguration": {
                        "Subnets": [
                            "subnet-07e1ad3abc4efce6758",
                            "subnet-04782e7f34ae3efdb"
                        ],
                        "AssignPublicIp": "ENABLED"
                    }
                }
            },
            "Next": "Notify Success",
            "Catch": [
                {
                    "ErrorEquals": [ "States.ALL" ],
                    "Next": "Notify Failure"
                }
            ]
        },
        "Notify Success": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sns:publish",
            "Parameters": {
                "Message": "AWS Fargate Task started by Step Functions succeeded",
                "TopicArn": "arn:aws:sns:ap-northeast-1:123456789012:FargateTaskNotification-SNSTopic-1XYW5YD5V0M7C"
            },
            "End": true
        },
        "Notify Failure": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sns:publish",
            "Parameters": {
                "Message": "AWS Fargate Task started by Step Functions failed",
                "TopicArn": "arn:aws:sns:ap-northeast-1:123456789012:FargateTaskNotification-SNSTopic-1XYW5YD5V0M7C"
            },
            "End": true
        }
    }
}
```
Transfer Data Records (Lambda, DynamoDB, Amazon SQS)

This sample project demonstrates how to read values from an Amazon DynamoDB table and send them to Amazon SQS using AWS Step Functions. Deploying this sample project will create a Step Functions state machine, a DynamoDB table, an AWS Lambda function, and an Amazon SQS topic.

In this project, Step Functions uses the Lambda function to populate the DynamoDB table, uses a for loop to read each of the entries, and then sends each entry to Amazon SQS.
Create the State Machine and Provision Resources

1. Open the Step Functions console and choose Create a state machine.
2. Choose Sample Projects, and then choose Transfer Data Records.

The state machine Code and Visual Workflow are displayed.

![State Machine Diagram]

Note
The Code section in this state machine references the AWS resources that will be created for this sample project.

3. Choose Next.

The Deploy resources page is displayed, listing the resources that will be created. For this sample project the resources include:

- A Lambda function for seeding the DynamoDB table
- An Amazon SQS queue
- A DynamoDB table

4. Choose Deploy Resources.

Note
It can take up to 10 minutes for these resources and related IAM permissions to be created. While the Deploy resources page is displayed, you can open the Stack ID link to see which resources are being provisioned.

Start a New Execution

1. On the New execution page, enter an execution name (optional) and choose Start Execution.
2. (Optional) To help identify your execution, you can specify an ID for it in the Enter an execution name box. If you don't enter an ID, Step Functions generates a unique ID automatically.

Note
Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch.
To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

3. Optionally, you can go to the newly created state machine on the Step Functions Dashboard, and then choose New execution.

4. When an execution is complete, you can select states on the Visual workflow and browse the Input and Output under Step details.

Example State Machine Code

The state machine in this sample project integrates with DynamoDB and Amazon SQS by passing parameters directly to those resources.

Browse through this example state machine to see how Step Functions controls DynamoDB and Amazon SQS by connecting to the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) in the Resource field, and by passing Parameters to the service API.

For more information about how AWS Step Functions can control other AWS services, see Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144).

```json
{
    "Comment": "An example of the Amazon States Language for reading messages from a DynamoDB table and sending them to SQS",
    "StartAt": "Seed the DynamoDB Table",
    "TimeoutSeconds": 3600,
    "States": {
        "Seed the DynamoDB Table": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "ResultPath": ".List",
            "Next": "For Loop Condition"
        },
        "For Loop Condition": {
            "Type": "Choice",
            "Choices": [
                { "Not": {
                    "Variable": ".List[0]",
                    "StringEquals": "DONE"
                },
                "Next": "Read Next Message from DynamoDB"
            ],
            "Default": "Succeed"
        },
        "Read Next Message from DynamoDB": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::dynamodb:getItem",
            "Parameters": {
                "TableName": "sqsconnector-DDBTable-1CAFOJWP8QD61",
                "Key": {
                    "MessageId": {
                        "S": ".List[0]"
                    }
                }
            },
            "ResultPath": ".DynamoDB",
            "Next": "Send Message to SQS"
        },
        "Send Message to SQS": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sqs:sendMessage",
            "Parameters": {
                "QueueUrl": "/queue/some-queue",
                "MessageBody": "Hello, world!
            }
        }
    }
}
```
For more information about passing parameters and managing results, see the following:

- Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150)
- ResultPath (p. 125)

IAM Example

This example AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy generated by the sample project includes the least privilege necessary to execute the state machine and related resources. It's a best practice to include only those permissions that are necessary in your IAM policies.

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Action": [
                "dynamodb:GetItem"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:dynamodb:ap-northeast-1:123456789012:table/TransferDataRecords-DDBTable-3I41R5L5EAGT"
            ],
            "Effect": "Allow"
        },
        {
            "Action": [
                "sqs:SendMessage"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:sqs:ap-northeast-1:123456789012:TransferDataRecords-SQSQueue-BKWXTS09LIW1"
            ],
            "Effect": "Allow"
        },
        {
            "Action": [
                "lambda:invokeFunction"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:lambda:ap-northeast-1:123456789012:function:TransferDataRecords-SeedingFunction-VN4KY2TPAZSR"
            ],
            "Effect": "Allow"
        }
    ]
}
```
Poll for Job Status (Lambda, AWS Batch)

This sample project creates an AWS Batch job poller. It implements an AWS Step Functions state machine that uses AWS Lambda to create a Wait state loop that checks on an AWS Batch job.

This sample project creates and configures all resources so that your Step Functions workflow will submit an AWS Batch job, and will wait for that job to complete before ending successfully.

**Note**
You can also implement this pattern without using a Lambda function. For information about controlling AWS Batch directly, see Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144).

This sample project creates the state machine, two Lambda functions, and an AWS Batch queue, and configures the related IAM permissions.

For more information about how AWS Step Functions can control other AWS services, see Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144).

Create the State Machine and Provision Resources

1. Open the Step Functions console and choose Create a state machine.
2. Choose Sample Projects, and then choose Job Status Poller.

   The state machine **Code** and **Visual Workflow** are displayed.

   ![State Machine Diagram](image)

   **Note**
   The Code section in this state machine references the AWS resources that will be created for this sample project.
3. Choose Create Resources.
The **Create Project Resources** page is displayed, listing the resources that will be created. For this sample project the resources include:

- A SubmitJob Lambda function
- A CheckJob Lambda function
- A SampleJobQueue Batch Job Queue

**Note**
It can take up to 10 minutes for these resources and related IAM permissions to be created. While the **Create Project Resources** page displays Creating resources, you can open the **Stack ID** link to see which resources are being provisioned.

When complete, the **New execution** page is displayed, with example input similar to this.

```json
{
   "jobName": "my-job",
   "jobQueue": "arn:aws:batch:us-east-2:123456789012:job-queue/SampleJobQueue-4d9d696031e1449",
   "wait_time": 60
}
```

### Starting an Execution

After you create your state machine, you can start an execution.

**To start a new execution**

1. On the **New execution** page, enter an execution name (optional), and then choose **Start Execution**.
2. (Optional) To help identify your execution, you can specify an ID for it in the **Enter an execution name** box. If you don’t enter an ID, Step Functions generates a unique ID automatically.

   **Note**
   Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don’t work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

3. Optionally, you can go to the newly created state machine on the Step Functions **Dashboard**, choose **New execution**, and then enter the input code using the name or Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of each newly created resource.

For example, the input for the previous execution using only the resource names would be as follows.

```json
{
   "jobName": "my-job",
   "jobDefinition": "SampleJobDefinition-343f54b445d5312",
   "jobQueue": "SampleJobQueue-4d9d696031e1449",
   "wait_time": 60
}
```

**Note**
wait_time instructs the Wait state to loop every 60 seconds.
4. Choose **Start Execution**.

   A new execution of your state machine starts, and a new page showing your running execution is displayed.

5. (Optional) In the **Execution Details** section, choose **Info** to view the **Execution Status** and the **Started** and **Closed** timestamps.

6. To view the changing status of your AWS Batch job and the looping results of your execution, choose **Output**.

---

**Task Timer (Lambda, Amazon SNS)**

This sample project creates a task timer. It implements an AWS Step Functions state machine that implements a `Wait` state, and uses an AWS Lambda function that sends an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) notification. A `Wait` state is a state type that waits for a trigger to perform a single unit of work.

**Note**

This sample project implements an AWS Lambda function to send an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) notification. You can also send an Amazon SNS notification directly from the Amazon States Language. See Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144).

This sample project creates the state machine, a Lambda function, and an Amazon SNS topic, and configures the related AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) permissions. For more information about the resources that are created with the **Task Timer** sample project, see the following:

For more information about how AWS Step Functions can control other AWS services, see Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144).

- AWS CloudFormation User Guide
- Amazon Simple Notification Service Developer Guide
- AWS Lambda Developer Guide
To create the Task Timer state machine and provision all resources

1. Open the Step Functions console and choose Create a state machine.
2. Choose Sample Projects, and then choose Task Timer.

The state machine Code and Visual Workflow are displayed.

![Task Timer State Machine Diagram]

Note
The Code section in this state machine references the AWS resources that will be created for this sample project.

3. Choose Create Sample Project.

The Create Project Resources page is displayed, listing the resources that will be created. For this sample project, the resources include:

- A SendToSNS Lambda function
- A TaskTimerTopic Amazon SNS topic

Note
It can take up to 10 minutes for these resources and related IAM permissions to be created. While the Create Project Resources page displays Creating resources, you can open the Stack ID: link to see which resources are being provisioned.

When complete, the New execution page is displayed, with example input similar to the following.

```json
{
  "topic": "arn:aws:sns:us-east-2:123456789012:StepFunctionsSample-TaskTimer-517b8680-e0ad-07cf-fdee-65aa5fc63ac0-SNSTopic-96RHT77RAKTS",
  "message": "HelloWorld",
  "timer_seconds": 10
}
```


A new execution of your state machine starts, and a new page showing your running execution is displayed.

5. (Optional) In the Execution Details section, choose Info to view the Execution Status and the Started and Closed timestamps.

6. To view the status, input, or output of each step in your execution, select the step in the Visual workflow and review the Step details.
Callback Pattern Example (Amazon SQS, Amazon SNS, Lambda)

This sample project demonstrates how to have AWS Step Functions pause during a task, and wait for an external process to return a task token that was generated when the task started.

When this sample project is deployed and an execution is started, the following steps occur:

1. Step Functions passes a message that includes a task token to an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
2. Step Functions then pauses, waiting for that token to be returned.
3. The Amazon SQS queue triggers an AWS Lambda function that calls `SendTaskSuccess` with that same task token.
4. When the task token is received, the workflow continues.
5. The "Notify Success" task publishes an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) message that the callback was received.

To learn how to implement the callback pattern in Step Functions, see Wait for a Callback with the Task Token (p. 147).

For more information about how AWS Step Functions can control other AWS services, see Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144).

Create State Machine and Provision Resources

1. Open the Step Functions console and choose Create a state machine.
2. Choose Sample Projects, and then choose Callback Pattern Example.
The state machine **Code** and **Visual Workflow** are displayed.

3. Choose **Create Sample Project**.

The **Create Project Resources** page is displayed, listing the resources that will be created. For this sample project the resources include:

- An Amazon SQS message queue.
- A Lambda function, that calls the Step Functions API action **SendTaskSuccess**.
- An Amazon SNS topic to notify success or failure when the workflow can continues.

**Note**

It can take up to 10 minutes for these resources and related IAM permissions to be created. While the **Create Project Resources** page displays **Creating resources**, you can open the **Stack ID**: link to see which resources are being provisioned.

When complete, the **New execution** page is displayed.

4. (Optional) Enter an execution name, and sample input.

```
Enter an execution name - optional
Enter your execution id here
TestCallback

Input - optional
Enter input values for this execution in JSON format
```

```
1 |
2 | {                          
3 |   "Comment": "Testing callback sample"
3 | }
```
5. Choose **Start Execution**.

A new execution of your state machine starts, and a new page showing your running execution is displayed.

6. To review how Step Functions progressed through the workflow and received a callback from Amazon SQS, review the entries in the **Execution event history**.

**Lambda Callback Example**

To see how the components of this sample project work together, see the resources that were deployed in your AWS account. For example, here is the Lambda function that calls Step Functions with the task token.

```javascript
console.log('Loading function');
const aws = require('aws-sdk');
exports.lambda_handler = (event, context, callback) => {
  const stepfunctions = new aws.StepFunctions();
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    const messageBody = JSON.parse(record.body);
    const taskToken = messageBody.TaskToken;
    const params = {
      output: "Callback task completed successfully.\n",
      taskToken: taskToken
    };
    console.log(`Calling Step Functions to complete callback task with params
${JSON.stringify(params)}`);
    stepfunctions.sendTaskSuccess(params, (err, data) => {
      if (err) {
        console.error(err.message);
        callback(err.message);
        return;
      }
      console.log(data);
      callback(null);
    });
  }
};
```

202
Manage an Amazon EMR Job

This sample project demonstrates Amazon EMR and AWS Step Functions integration.

It shows how to create an Amazon EMR cluster, add multiple steps and run them, and then terminate the cluster.

Important
Amazon EMR does not have a free pricing tier. Running the sample project will incur costs. You can find pricing information on the Amazon EMR pricing page. The availability of Amazon EMR service integration is subject to the availability of Amazon EMR APIs. Because of this, this sample project might not work correctly in some AWS Regions. See the Amazon EMR documentation for limitations in special Regions.

Create the State Machine and Provision Resources

1. Open the Step Functions console and choose Create a state machine.
2. Choose Sample Projects, and then choose Manage an EMR Job.

The state machine Code and Visual Workflow are displayed.

3. Choose Next.

The Deploy resources page is displayed, listing the resources that will be created. For this sample project the resources include an Amazon S3 Bucket.
4. Choose Deploy Resources.

Note
It can take up to 10 minutes for these resources and related AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) permissions to be created. While the Deploy resources page is displayed, you can open the Stack ID link to see which resources are being provisioned.

Start a New Execution

1. On the New execution page, enter an execution name (optional), and then choose Start Execution.
2. (Optional) To help identify your execution, you can specify an ID for it in the **Enter an execution name** box. If you don't enter an ID, Step Functions generates a unique ID automatically.

**Note**
Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

3. (Optional) You can go to the newly created state machine on the Step Functions **Dashboard**, and then choose **New execution**.

4. When an execution is complete, you can select states on the Visual workflow and browse the **Input** and **Output** under **Step details**.

---

**Example State Machine Code**

The state machine in this sample project integrates with Amazon EMR by passing parameters directly to those resources. Browse through this example state machine to see how Step Functions uses a state machine to call the Amazon EMR task synchronously, waits for the task to succeed or fail, and terminates the cluster.

For more information about how AWS Step Functions can control other AWS services, see **Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions** (p. 144).

```json
{
    "Comment": "An example of the Amazon States Language for running jobs on Amazon EMR",
    "StartAt": "Create an EMR cluster",
    "States": {
        "Create an EMR cluster": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "Resource": "arn:<PARTITION>:states:::elasticmapreduce:createCluster.sync",
            "Parameters": {
                "Name": "ExampleCluster",
                "VisibleToAllUsers": true,
                "ReleaseLabel": "emr-5.26.0",
                "Applications": [
                    { "Name": "Hive" }
                ],
                "ServiceRole": "<EMR_SERVICE_ROLE>",
                "JobFlowRole": "<EMR_EC2_INSTANCE_PROFILE>",
                "LogUri": "s3://<EMR_LOG_S3_BUCKET>/logs/",
                "Instances": {
                    "KeepJobFlowAliveWhenNoSteps": true,
                    "InstanceFleets": [
                        { "Name": "MyMasterFleet",
                          "InstanceFleetType": "MASTER",
                          "TargetOnDemandCapacity": 1,
                          "InstanceTypeConfigs": [
                            { "InstanceType": "m5.xlarge" }
                          ]
                        },
                        { "Name": "MyCoreFleet",
                          "InstanceFleetType": "CORE",
                          "TargetOnDemandCapacity": 1,
                          "InstanceTypeConfigs": [
                            { "InstanceType": "m5.xlarge"
                        ]
                      ]
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```


```
{
  
  },

  },

  },

  }
}
}
"
Next": "Run first step"
},
"Run first step": {
  "Type": "Task",
  "Resource": "arn:<PARTITION>:states::elasticmapreduce:addStep.sync",
  "Parameters": {
    "ClusterId.$": ".cluster.ClusterId",
    "Step": {
      "Name": "My first EMR step",
      "ActionOnFailure": "CONTINUE",
      "HadoopJarStep": {
        "Jar": "command-runner.jar",
        "Args": ["<COMMAND_ARGUMENTS>"
      }
    },
    "Retry": [
      {
        "ErrorEquals": [ "States.ALL" ],
        "IntervalSeconds": 1,
        "MaxAttempts": 3,
        "BackoffRate": 2.0
      }
    ],
    "ResultPath": ".firstStep",
    "Next": "Run second step"
  },
  "Run second step": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "Resource": "arn:<PARTITION>:states::elasticmapreduce:addStep.sync",
    "Parameters": {
      "ClusterId.$": ".cluster.ClusterId",
      "Step": {
        "Name": "My second EMR step",
        "ActionOnFailure": "CONTINUE",
        "HadoopJarStep": {
          "Jar": "command-runner.jar",
          "Args": ["<COMMAND_ARGUMENTS>"
        }
      },
      "Retry": [
        {
          "ErrorEquals": [ "States.ALL" ],
          "IntervalSeconds": 1,
          "MaxAttempts": 3,
          "BackoffRate": 2.0
        }
      ],
      "ResultPath": ".secondStep",
      "Next": "Terminate Cluster"
    },
    "Terminate Cluster": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "Resource": "arn:<PARTITION>:states::elasticmapreduce:terminateCluster",
      "Parameters": {
        "ClusterId.$": ".cluster.ClusterId"
      },
      "End": true
    }
```
IAM Example

This example AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy generated by the sample project includes the least privilege necessary to execute the state machine and related resources. It's a best practice to include only those permissions that are necessary in your IAM policies.

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "elasticmapreduce:RunJobFlow",
        "elasticmapreduce:DescribeCluster",
        "elasticmapreduce:TerminateJobFlows"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": "iam:PassRole",
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/StepFunctionsSample-EMRJobManagement-EMRServiceRole-ANPAJ2UCCR6DPCEEXAMPLE",
        "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/StepFunctionsSample-EMRJobManagementWJAL8XUTNFEMLI-ANPAJ2UCCR6DPCEEXAMPLE-EMREc2InstanceProfile-1ANPAJ2UCCR6DPCEEXAMPLE"
      ]
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": ["events:PutTargets", "events:PutRule", "events:DescribeRule"],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:events:sa-east-1:123456789012:rule/StepFunctionsGetEventForEMRRunJobFlowRule"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

The following policy ensures that addStep has sufficient permissions.

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "elasticmapreduce:AddJobFlowSteps",
        "elasticmapreduce:DescribeStep",
        "elasticmapreduce:CancelSteps"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:elasticmapreduce:*:*:cluster/*"
    }
  ]
}
```
Start a Workflow within a Workflow (Step Functions, Lambda)

This sample project demonstrates how to use an AWS Step Functions state machine to launch other state machine executions. See Start Workflow Executions from a Task State (p. 136).

Create the State Machine and Provision Resources

1. Open the Step Functions console and choose Create a state machine.
2. Choose Sample Projects, and then choose Start a Workflow Within a Workflow.

The state machine Code and Visual Workflow are displayed.

3. Choose Next.

The Deploy resources page is displayed, listing the resources that will be created. For this sample project, the resources include:

- An additional Step Functions state machine

For information about how to configure IAM when using Step Functions with other AWS services, see IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258).
• A Lambda function for callback

4. Choose **Deploy Resources**.

   **Note**
   It can take up to 10 minutes for these resources and related IAM permissions to be created. While the **Deploy resources** page is displayed, you can open the **Stack ID** link to see which resources are being provisioned.

## Start a New Execution

1. On the **New execution** page, enter an execution name (optional), and then choose **Start Execution**.

2. (Optional) To help identify your execution, you can specify an ID for it in the **Enter an execution name** box. If you don't enter an ID, Step Functions generates a unique ID automatically.

   **Note**
   Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

3. Optionally, you can go to the newly created state machine on the Step Functions **Dashboard**, and then choose **New execution**.

4. When an execution is complete, you can select states on the **Visual workflow** and browse the **Input** and **Output** under **Step details**.

## Example State Machine Code

The state machine in this sample project integrates another state machine and AWS Lambda by passing parameters directly to those resources.

Browse through this example state machine to see how Step Functions calls the **StartExecution** API action for the other state machine. It launches two instances of the other state machine in parallel: one using the **Run a Job** (p. 147) pattern and one using the **Wait for a Callback with the Task Token** (p. 147) pattern.

For more information about how AWS Step Functions can control other AWS services, see **Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions** (p. 144).

```json
{
    "Comment": "An example of combining workflows using a Step Functions StartExecution task state with various integration patterns.",
    "StartAt": "Start new workflow and continue",
    "States": {
        "Start new workflow and continue": {
            "Comment": "Start an execution of another Step Functions state machine and continue",
            "Type": "Task",
            "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::states:startExecution",
            "Parameters": {
                "Input": {
                    "NeedCallback": false,
                    "AWS_STEP_FUNCTIONS_STARTED_BY_EXECUTION_ID.$": "$.Execution.Id"
                }
            }
        },
        "Next": "Start in parallel"
    },
    "Start in parallel": {
        "Comment": "A Lambda function for callback
        "Type": "Task",
        "Input": {
            "NeedCallback": false,
            "AWS_STEP_FUNCTIONS_STARTED_BY_EXECUTION_ID.$": "$.Execution.Id"
        }
    }
}
```
"Comment": "Start two executions of the same state machine in parallel",
"Type": "Parallel",
"End": true,
"Branches": [
  {
    "StartAt": "Start new workflow and wait for completion",
    "States": {
      "Start new workflow and wait for completion": {
        "Comment": "Start an execution of the same
'NestingPatternAnotherStateMachine' and wait for its completion",
        "Type": "Task",
        "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::states:startExecution.sync",
        "Parameters": {
          "Input": {
            "NeedCallback": false,
            "AWS_STEP_FUNCTIONS_STARTED_BY_EXECUTION_ID.$": "$$\.Execution.Id"
          }
        },
        "OutputPath": ".\$.Output",
        "End": true
      }
    },
    "StartAt": "Start new workflow and wait for callback",
    "States": {
      "Start new workflow and wait for callback": {
        "Comment": "Start an execution and wait for it to call back with a task
        token",
        "Type": "Task",
        "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::states:startExecution.waitForTaskToken",
        "Parameters": {
          "Input": {
            "NeedCallback": true,
            "AWS_STEP_FUNCTIONS_STARTED_BY_EXECUTION_ID.$": "$$\.Execution.Id",
            "TaskToken.$": "$$\.Task.Token"
          }
        },
        "End": true
      }
    }]
  }
]
• An Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic
• An Amazon DynamoDB table
• An AWS Step Functions state machine

In this project, Step Functions uses an AWS Lambda function to pull messages off an Amazon SQS queue, and pass a JSON array of those message to a **Map** state. For each message in the queue, the state machine writes the message to DynamoDB, invokes the other Lambda function to remove the message from Amazon SQS, and then publishes the message to the Amazon SNS topic.

For more information on **Map** states and Step Functions service integrations, see the following:

- Map (p. 114)
- Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144)

Create the State Machine and Provision Resources

1. Open the [Step Functions console](https://console.aws.amazon.com/stepfunctions/home) and choose **Create a state machine**.
2. Choose **Sample Projects**, and then choose **Iterate steps with a Map state**.
   
   The state machine **Code** and **Visual Workflow** are displayed.

3. Choose **Next**.
Subscribe to the Amazon SNS Topic

1. Open the Amazon SNS console.
2. Choose Topics and choose the topic that was created by the Map state sample project.
   
   The name will be similar to MapSampleProj-SNSTopic-1CQO4HQ3IR1KN.
3. Under Subscriptions, choose Create subscription.
   
   The Create subscription page is displayed, listing the Topic ARN for the topic.
4. Under Protocol, choose Email.
5. Under Endpoint, enter an email address to subscribe to the topic.
6. Choose Create subscription.

   Note
   You must confirm the subscription in your email before it is active.
7. Open the Subscription Confirmation email in the related account and open the Confirm subscription URL.

   The Subscription confirmed! page is displayed.

Add Messages to the Amazon SQS Queue

1. Open the Amazon SQS console.
2. Choose the queue that was created by the Map state sample project.
   
   The name will be similar to MapSampleProj-SQSQueue-1UDIC9VZDORN7.
3. In the Queue Actions list, select Send a Message.
4. On the Send a Message window, enter a message and choose Send Message.
5. Choose Send Another Message.

   Continue entering messages until you have several in the Amazon SQS queue.
6. Choose Close.
Start a New Execution

**Note**
Queues in Amazon SNS are eventually consistent. For best results, wait a few minutes between populating your queue and running an execution of your state machine.

1. Open the Step Functions console.
2. On the State machines page, choose the MapStateStateMachine state machine that was created by the sample project and choose **Start execution**.
3. On the New execution page, enter an execution name (optional), and then choose **Start Execution**.
4. (Optional) To help identify your execution, you can specify an ID for it in the Enter an execution name box. If you don't enter an ID, Step Functions generates a unique ID automatically.

**Note**
Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

5. (Optional) Go to the newly created state machine on the Step Functions Dashboard, and then choose **New execution**.
6. When an execution is complete, you can select states on the Visual workflow and browse the Input and Output under Step details.

Example State Machine Code

The state machine in this sample project integrates with Amazon SQS, Amazon SNS, and Lambda by passing parameters directly to those resources.

Browse through this example state machine to see how Step Functions controls Lambda, DynamoDB, Amazon SNS by connecting to the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) in the Resource field, and by passing Parameters to the service API.

For more information about how AWS Step Functions can control other AWS services, see Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144).

```json
{
  "Comment": "An example of the Amazon States Language for reading messages from an SQS queue and iteratively processing each message.",
  "StartAt": "Read messages from SQS Queue",
  "States": {
    "Read Messages from SQS Queue": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::lambda:invoke",
      "OutputPath": "$Payload",
      "Parameters": {
        "FunctionName": "MapSampleProj-ReadFromSQSQueueLambda-1MY3M63RMJVA9"
      },
      "Next": "Are there messages to process?"
    },
    "Are there messages to process?": {
      "Type": "Choice",
      "Choices": [
        {
          "Variable": "$",
          "StringEquals": "No messages",
          "Next": "Finish"
        }
      ]
    }
  }
}
```
"Default": "Process messages"
},
"Process messages": {
"Type": "Map",
"Next": "Finish",
"ItemsPath": "$",
"Parameters": {
"MessageNumber.$": "$.Map.Item.Index",
"MessageDetails.$": "$.Map.Item.Value"
},
"Iterator": {
"StartAt": "Write message to DynamoDB",
"States": {
"Write message to DynamoDB": {
"Type": "Task",
"Resource": "arn:aws:states:::dynamodb:putItem",
"ResultPath": null,
"Parameters": {
"TableName": "MapSampleProj-DDBTable-YJDJ1MKIN6C5",
"ReturnConsumedCapacity": "TOTAL",
"Item": {
"MessageId": {
"S.$": "$MessageDetails.MessageId"
},
"Body": {
"S.$": "$MessageDetails.Body"
}
},
"Next": "Remove message from SQS queue"
},
"Remove message from SQS queue": {
"Type": "Task",
"Resource": "arn:aws:states:::lambda:invoke",
"InputPath": "$MessageDetails",
"ResultPath": null,
"Parameters": {
"FunctionName": "MapSampleProj-DeleteFromSQSQueueLambda-198J2839ZO5K2",
"Payload": {
"ReceiptHandle.$": "$ReceiptHandle"
},
"Next": "Publish message to SNS topic"
},
"Publish message to SNS topic": {
"Type": "Task",
"Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sns:publish",
"InputPath": "$MessageDetails",
"Parameters": {
"Subject": "Message from Step Functions!",
"Message.$": "$Body",
"TopicArn": "arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:012345678910:MapSampleProj-SNSTopic-1CQO4H33R1KN"
},
"End": true
}
}
},
"Finish": {
"Type": "Succeed"
}
}
IAM Example

This example AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy generated by the sample project includes the least privilege necessary to execute the state machine and related resources. We recommend that you include only those permissions that are necessary in your IAM policies.

```
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
      {  
         "Action": [  
            "lambda:InvokeFunction"
         ],
         "Resource": [  
            "arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:012345678901:function:MapSampleProj-ReadFromSQSQueueLambda-1MY3M63RMJVA9",
            "arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:012345678901:function:MapSampleProj-DeleteFromSQSQueueLambda-198J2839Z05K2"
         ],
         "Effect": "Allow"
      },
      {  
         "Action": [  
            "dynamodb:PutItem"
         ],
         "Resource": [  
            "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-east-1:012345678901:table/MapSampleProj-DDBTable-YJDDJ1MKIN6CS"
         ],
         "Effect": "Allow"
      },
      {  
         "Action": [  
            "sns:Publish"
         ],
         "Resource": [  
            "arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:012345678901:MapSampleProj-SNSTopic-1CQ04HQ3IR1KN"
         ],
         "Effect": "Allow"
      }
   ]
}
```

For information about how to configure IAM when using Step Functions with other AWS services, see IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258).

Train a Machine Learning Model

This sample project demonstrates how to use Amazon SageMaker and AWS Step Functions to train a machine learning model and how to batch transform a test dataset. This sample project creates the following:

- An AWS Lambda function
- An Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket
- An AWS Step Functions state machine
- Related AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) roles
In this project, Step Functions uses a Lambda function to seed an Amazon S3 bucket with a test dataset. It then trains a machine learning model and performs a batch transform, using the Amazon SageMaker service integration (p. 164).

For more information about Amazon SageMaker and Step Functions service integrations, see the following:

- Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144)
- Manage Amazon SageMaker with Step Functions (p. 164)

**Note**
This sample project may incur charges.
For new AWS users, a free usage tier is available. On this tier, services are free below a certain level of usage. For more information about AWS costs and the Free Tier, see Amazon SageMaker Pricing.

**Create the State Machine and Provision Resources**

1. Open the Step Functions console and choose **Create a state machine**.
2. Choose **Sample Projects**, and then choose **Train a machine learning model**.

   The state machine **Code** and **Visual Workflow** are displayed.

3. Choose **Next**.

   The **Deploy resources** page is displayed, listing the resources that will be created. For this sample project, the resources include:

   - A Lambda function
   - An Amazon S3 bucket
   - A Step Functions state machine
   - Related IAM roles
4. Choose **Deploy Resources**.

   **Note**
   It can take up to 10 minutes for these resources and related IAM permissions to be created. While the **Deploy resources** page is displayed, you can open the **Stack ID** link to see which resources are being provisioned.

## Start a New Execution

1. Open the **Step Functions** console.
2. On the **State machines** page, choose the **TrainAndBatchTransformStateMachine** state machine that was created by the sample project, and then choose **Start execution**.
3. On the **New execution** page, enter an execution name (optional), and then choose **Start Execution**.
4. (Optional) To help identify your execution, you can specify an ID for it in the **Enter an execution name** box. If you don’t enter an ID, Step Functions generates a unique ID automatically.

   **Note**
   Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

5. (Optional) Go to the newly created state machine on the **Step Functions Dashboard**, and then choose **New execution**.
6. When an execution is complete, you can select states on the **Visual workflow** and browse the **Input** and **Output** under **Step details**.

## Example State Machine Code

The state machine in this sample project integrates with Amazon SageMaker and AWS Lambda by passing parameters directly to those resources, and uses an Amazon S3 bucket for the training data source and output.

Browse through this example state machine to see how Step Functions controls Lambda and Amazon SageMaker.

For more information about how AWS Step Functions can control other AWS services, see **Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions** (p. 144).

```json
{
  "StartAt": "Generate dataset",
  "States": {
    "Generate dataset": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "Next": "Train model (XGBoost)"
    },
    "Train model (XGBoost)": {
      "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sagemaker:createTrainingJob.sync",
      "Parameters": {
        "AlgorithmSpecification": {
          "TrainingImage": "433757028032.dkr.ecr.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/xgboost:latest",
          "TrainingInputMode": "File"
        },
        "OutputDataConfig": {
          "S3OutputPath": "s3://trainandbatchtransform-s3bucket-1jn1le6gadwfz/models"
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```
"StoppingCondition": {
    "MaxRuntimeInSeconds": 86400
},
"ResourceConfig": {
    "InstanceCount": 1,
    "InstanceType": "ml.m4.xlarge",
    "VolumeSizeInGB": 30
},
"RoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/TrainAndBatchTransform-SageMakerAPIExecutionRole-Y9IX3DLF6EUO",
"InputDataConfig": [
{
    "DataSource": {
        "S3DataSource": {
            "S3DataDistributionType": "ShardedByS3Key",
            "S3DataType": "S3Prefix",
            "S3Uri": "s3://trainandbatchtransform-s3bucket-1jn1le6gadwfz/csv/train.csv"
        }
    },
    "ChannelName": "train",
    "ContentType": "text/csv"
}]
],
"HyperParameters": {
    "objective": "reg:logistic",
    "eval_metric": "rmse",
    "num_round": "5"
},
"TrainingJobName.$": "$$$.Execution.Name"
},
"Type": "Task",
"Next": "Save Model"
},
"Save Model": {
    "Parameters": {
        "PrimaryContainer": {
            "Image": "433757028032.dkr.ecr.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/xgboost:latest",
            "Environment": {},
            "ModelDataUrl.$": "$.ModelArtifacts.S3ModelArtifacts"
        },
        "ExecutionRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/TrainAndBatchTransform-SageMakerAPIExecutionRole-Y9IX3DLF6EUO",
        "ModelName.$": "$$.TrainingJobName"
    },
    "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sagemaker:createModel",
    "Type": "Task",
    "Next": "Batch transform"
},
"Batch transform": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sagemaker:createTransformJob.sync",
    "Parameters": {
        "MethodName.$": "$$$.Execution.Name",
        "TransformInput": {
            "CompressionType": "None",
            "ContentType": "text/csv",
            "DataSource": {
                "S3DataSource": {
                    "S3DataFormat": "S3Prefix",
                    "S3Uri": "s3://trainandbatchtransform-s3bucket-1jn1le6gadwfz/csv/test.csv"
                }
            }
        },
        "TransformOutput": {
            "S3OutputPath": "s3://trainandbatchtransform-s3bucket-1jn1le6gadwfz/output"
        }
    }
}
"TransformResources": {
  "InstanceCount": 1,
  "InstanceType": "ml.m4.xlarge"
},
  "TransformJobName.$": "$.Execution.Name"
},
  "End": true
}
}
}

For information about how to configure IAM when using Step Functions with other AWS services, see **IAM Policies for Integrated Services** (p. 258).

**IAM Example**

These example AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policies generated by the sample project include the least privilege necessary to execute the state machine and related resources. We recommend that you include only those permissions that are necessary in your IAM policies.

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Action": [
        "cloudwatch:PutMetricData",
        "logs:CreateLogStream",
        "logs:PutLogEvents",
        "logs:CreateLogGroup",
        "logs:DescribeLogStreams",
        "s3:GetObject",
        "s3:PutObject",
        "s3:ListBucket",
        "ecr:GetAuthorizationToken",
        "ecr:BatchCheckLayerAvailability",
        "ecr:GetDownloadUrlForLayer",
        "ecr:BatchGetImage"
      ],
      "Resource": "*",
      "Effect": "Allow"
    }
  ]
}
```

The following policy allows the Lambda function to seed the Amazon S3 bucket with sample data.

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Action": [
        "s3:PutObject"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::trainandbatchtransform-s3bucket-1jn1le6adwfz/*",
      "Effect": "Allow"
    }
  ]
}
```

For information about how to configure IAM when using Step Functions with other AWS services, see **IAM Policies for Integrated Services** (p. 258).
Tune a Machine Learning Model

This sample project demonstrates using Amazon SageMaker to tune the hyperparameters of a machine learning model, and to batch transform a test dataset. This sample project creates the following:

- Three AWS Lambda functions
- An Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket
- An AWS Step Functions state machine
- Related AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) roles

In this project, Step Functions uses a Lambda function to seed an Amazon S3 bucket with a test dataset. It then creates a hyperparameter tuning job using the Amazon SageMaker service integration (p. 164). It then uses a Lambda function to extract the data path, saves the tuning model, extracts the model name, and then runs a batch transform job to perform inference in Amazon SageMaker.

For more information about Amazon SageMaker and Step Functions service integrations, see the following:

- Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144)
- Manage Amazon SageMaker with Step Functions (p. 164)

**Note**

This sample project may incur charges.

For new AWS users, a free usage tier is available. On this tier, services are free below a certain level of usage. For more information about AWS costs and the Free Tier, see Amazon SageMaker Pricing.

Create the State Machine and Provision Resources

1. Open the Step Functions console and choose **Create a state machine**.
2. Choose **Sample Projects**, and then choose **Tune a machine learning model**.

The state machine **Code** and **Visual Workflow** are displayed.

3. Choose **Next**.

The **Deploy resources** page is displayed, listing the resources that will be created. For this sample project, the resources include:

- Three Lambda functions
- An Amazon S3 bucket
- A Step Functions state machine
- Related IAM roles

4. Choose **Deploy Resources**.
**Note**
It can take up to 10 minutes for these resources and related IAM permissions to be created. While the **Deploy resources** page is displayed, you can open the **Stack ID** link to see which resources are being provisioned.

### Start a New Execution

1. Open the Step Functions console.
2. On the **State machines** page, choose the **HyperparamTuningAndBatchTransformStateMachine** state machine that was created by the sample project and choose **Start execution**.
3. On the **New execution** page, enter an execution name (optional), and then choose **Start Execution**.
4. (Optional) To help identify your execution, you can specify an ID for it in the **Enter an execution name** box. If you don't enter an ID, Step Functions generates a unique ID automatically.

**Note**
Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.

5. (Optional) Go to the newly created state machine on the Step Functions **Dashboard**, and then choose **New execution**.
6. When an execution is complete, you can select states on the **Visual workflow** and browse the **Input** and **Output** under **Step details**.

### Example State Machine Code

The state machine in this sample project integrates with Amazon SageMaker and AWS Lambda by passing parameters directly to those resources, and uses an Amazon S3 bucket for the training data source and output.

Browse through this example state machine to see how Step Functions controls Lambda and Amazon SageMaker.

For more information about how AWS Step Functions can control other AWS services, see **Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions** (p. 144).

```json
{
    "StartAt": "Generate Training Dataset",
    "States": {
        "Generate Training Dataset": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "Next": "HyperparameterTuning (XGBoost)"
        },
        "HyperparameterTuning (XGBoost)": {
            "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sagemaker:createHyperParameterTuningJob.sync",
            "Parameters": {
                "HyperParameterTuningJobName.$": ".body.jobName",
                "HyperParameterTuningJobConfig": {
                    "Strategy": "Bayesian",
                    "HyperParameterTuningJobObjective": {
                        "Type": "Minimize",
                        "MetricName": "validation:rmse"
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```
"ResourceLimits": {
  "MaxNumberOfTrainingJobs": 2,
  "MaxParallelTrainingJobs": 2
},
"ParameterRanges": {
  "ContinuousParameterRanges": [{
    "Name": "alpha",
    "MinValue": "0",
    "MaxValue": "1000",
    "ScalingType": "Auto"
  },
  {"Name": "gamma",
    "MinValue": "0",
    "MaxValue": "5",
    "ScalingType": "Auto"
  }
],
"IntegerParameterRanges": [{
    "Name": "max_delta_step",
    "MinValue": "0",
    "MaxValue": "10",
    "ScalingType": "Auto"
  },
  {"Name": "max_depth",
    "MinValue": "0",
    "MaxValue": "10",
    "ScalingType": "Auto"
  }
}
},
"TrainingJobDefinition": {
  "AlgorithmSpecification": {
    "TrainingImage": "433757028032.dkr.ecr.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/xgboost:latest",
    "TrainingInputMode": "File"
  },
  "OutputDataConfig": {
    "S3OutputPath": "s3://stepfunctionssample-sagemaker-bucketformodelanddata-80fbmdlcs9f/models"
  },
  "StoppingCondition": {
    "MaxRuntimeInSeconds": 86400
  },
  "ResourceConfig": {
    "InstanceCount": 1,
    "InstanceType": "ml.m4.xlarge",
    "VolumeSizeInGB": 30
  },
  "RoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/StepFunctionsSample-SageMakerAPIExecutionRole-1MNH1V5SGGOG",
  "InputDataConfig": [{
    "DataSource": {
      "S3DataSource": {
        "S3DataDistributionType": "FullyReplicated",
        "S3DataType": "S3Prefix",
        "S3Uri": "s3://stepfunctionssample-sagemaker-bucketformodelanddata-80fbmdlcs9f/csv/train.csv"
      }
    },
    "ChannelName": "train",
    "ContentType": "text/csv"
  }
}
"DataSource": {
    "S3DataSource": {
        "S3DataDistributionType": "FullyReplicated",
        "S3DataType": "S3Prefix",
        "S3Uri": "s3://stepfunctionssample-sagemak-bucketformodelanddata-80fblmdlc9sf/csv/validation.csv"
    },
    "ChannelName": "validation",
    "ContentType": "text/csv"
},
"StaticHyperParameters": {
    "precision_dtype": "float32",
    "num_round": "2"
}
},
"Type": "Task",
"Next": "Extract Model Path"
},
"Extract Model Path": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "Next": "HyperparameterTuning - Save Model"
},
"HyperparameterTuning - Save Model": {
    "Parameters": {
        "PrimaryContainer": {
            "Image": "433757028032.dkr.ecr.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/xgboost:latest",
            "Environment": {},
            "ModelDataUrl.$": "$.body.modelDataUrl"
        },
        "ExecutionRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/StepFunctionsSample-SageM-SageMakerAPIExecutionRol-1MNHHVS5CGGOG",
        "ModelName.$": "$.body.bestTrainingJobName"
    },
    "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sagemaker:createModel",
    "Type": "Task",
    "Next": "Extract Model Name"
},
"Extract Model Name": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "Next": "Batch transform"
},
"Batch transform": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sagemaker:createTransformJob.sync",
    "Parameters": {
        "ModelName.$": "$.body.jobName",
        "TransformInput": {
            "CompressionType": "None",
            "ContentType": "text/csv",
            "DataSource": {
                "S3DataDistributionType": "S3Prefix",
                "S3Uri": "s3://stepfunctionssample-sagemak-bucketformodelanddata-80fblmdlc9sf/csv/test.csv"
            }
        },
"S3OutputPath": "s3://stepfunctionssample-sagemakerbucketformodelanddata-80fbmdcs9f/output"
},
  "TransformResources": {
    "InstanceCount": 1,
    "InstanceType": "ml.m4.xlarge"
  },
  "TransformJobName.$": "$.body.jobName"
},
  "End": true
}

For information about how to configure IAM when using Step Functions with other AWS services, see IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258).

**IAM Examples**

These example AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policies generated by the sample project include the least privilege necessary to execute the state machine and related resources. We recommend that you include only those permissions that are necessary in your IAM policies.

The following IAM policy is attached to the state machine, and allows the state machine execution to access necessary Amazon SageMaker, Lambda, and Amazon S3 resources.

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Action": [
        "sagemaker:CreateHyperParameterTuningJob",
        "sagemaker:DescribeHyperParameterTuningJob",
        "sagemaker:StopHyperParameterTuningJob",
        "sagemaker:ListTags",
        "sagemaker:CreateModel",
        "sagemaker:CreateTransformJob",
        "iam:PassRole"
      ],
      "Resource": "*",
      "Effect": "Allow"
    },
    {
      "Action": [
        "lambda:InvokeFunction"
      ],
      "Resource": [
      ],
      "Effect": "Allow"
    },
    {
      "Action": [
        "events:PutTargets",
        "events:PutRule",
        "events:DescribeRule"
      ],
      "Resource": [
```
The following IAM policy is referenced in the TrainingJobDefinition and HyperparameterTuning fields of the HyperparameterTuning state.

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Action": [
        "cloudwatch:PutMetricData",
        "logs:CreateLogStream",
        "logs:PutLogEvents",
        "logs:CreateLogGroup",
        "logs:DescribeLogStreams",
        "ecr:GetAuthorizationToken",
        "ecr:BatchCheckLayerAvailability",
        "ecr:GetDownloadUrlForLayer",
        "ecr:BatchGetImage",
        "sagemaker:DescribeHyperParameterTuningJob",
        "sagemaker:StopHyperParameterTuningJob",
        "sagemaker:ListTags"
      ],
      "Resource": "*",
      "Effect": "Allow"
    },
    {
      "Action": [
        "s3:GetObject",
        "s3:PutObject"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::stepfunctionssample-sagemaker-bucketformodelanddata-80fb1mdlc9f/*",
      "Effect": "Allow"
    },
    {
      "Action": [
        "s3:ListBucket"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::stepfunctionssample-sagemaker-bucketformodelanddata-80fb1mdlc9f",
      "Effect": "Allow"
    }
  ]
}
```

The following IAM policy allows the Lambda function to seed the Amazon S3 bucket with sample data.

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Action": [
        "s3:PutObject"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::stepfunctionssample-sagemaker-bucketformodelanddata-80fb1mdlc9f/*",
      "Effect": "Allow"
    }
  ]
}
```
Process High-Volume Messages from Amazon SQS (Express Workflows)

This sample project demonstrates how to use an AWS Step Functions Express Workflow to process messages or data from a high-volume event source, such as Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS). Because Express Workflows can be started at a very high rate, they are ideal for high-volume event processing or streaming data workloads.

Here are two commonly used methods to execute your state machine from an event source:

- **Configure an Amazon CloudWatch Events rule to start a state machine execution whenever the event source emits an event.** For more information, see Creating a CloudWatch Events Rule That Triggers on an Event.
- **Map the event source to a Lambda function, and write function code to execute your state machine.** The AWS Lambda function is invoked each time your event source emits an event, in turn starting a state machine execution. For more information see Using AWS Lambda with Amazon SQS.

This sample project uses the second method to start an execution each time the Amazon SQS queue sends a message. You can use a similar configuration to trigger Express Workflows execution from other event sources, such as Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3), Amazon DynamoDB, and Amazon Kinesis.

For more information about Express Workflows and Step Functions service integrations, see the following:

- Standard vs. Express Workflows (p. 89)
- Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144)
- Quotas for Express Workflows (p. 245)

Create the State Machine and Provision Resources

1. Open the Step Functions console and choose Create a state machine.
2. Choose Run a sample project, and then choose Process high-volume messages from Amazon SQS.

   The state machine Code and Visual Workflow are displayed.
3. Choose **Next**.

The **Deploy resources** page is displayed, listing the resources that will be created. For this sample project, the resources include:

- A Step Functions state machine
- An Amazon SQS queue
- A Lambda function

4. Choose **Deploy Resources**.

**Note**

It can take up to 10 minutes for these resources and related IAM permissions to be created. While the **Deploy resources** page is displayed, you can open the **Stack ID** link to see which resources are being provisioned.

---

**Trigger Execution**

1. Open the **Amazon SQS console**.
2. Select the queue that was created by the sample project.

   The name will be similar to **Example-SQSQueue-wJalrXUtnFEMI**.
3. In the **Queue Actions** list, select **Send a Message**.
4. Use the copy button to copy the following message, and on the **Send a Message** window, enter it, and choose **Send Message**.

   **Note**

   In this sample message, the **input** line has been formatted with line breaks to fit the page. Use the copy button or otherwise ensure that it is entered as a single line with no breaks.

   ```json
   {
   "input":
   "QW5kIGxpa2UgdGlIGhlc2VsZWNzIGZyb20gbmFtZS1tb2JpbiB0aGlzIGFubm90IHN0YXRpb24gdGhlIGF1ZSB0aGlzIGhhcmNoIGVuZGVjIGFjaGVzc291bnRzIGZyb20gb3J0IG9uZ3RhdGFzLg=="
   }
   ```
5. Choose Close.
6. Open the Step Functions console.
7. Go to your Amazon CloudWatch Logs log group and inspect the logs. The name of the log group will look like example-ExpressLogGroup-wJalrXUtnFEMI.

Example Lambda Function Code

The following is Lambda function code that shows how the initiating Lambda function starts a state machine execution using the AWS SDK.

```python
import boto3

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    message_body = event['Records'][0]['body']
    client = boto3.client('stepfunctions')
    response = client.start_execution(
        stateMachineArn='${ExpressStateMachineArn}',
        input=message_body
    )
```

Example State Machine Code

The Express Workflow in this sample project consists of a set of Lambda functions for text processing.

For more information about how AWS Step Functions can control other AWS services, see Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144).

```json
{
    "Comment": "An example of using Express workflows to run text processing for each message sent from an SQS queue.",
    "StartAt": "Decode base64 string",
    "States": {
        "Decode base64 string": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "Resource": "arn:<PARTITION>:lambda::<REGION>:function::<FUNCTION_NAME>",
            "Parameters": {
                "FunctionName": "<LAMBDA_FUNCTION_NAME>",
                "Payload": "$"},
            "Next": "Generate statistics"
        },
        "Generate statistics": {
            "Type": "Task",
            "Resource": "arn::<PARTITION>:cloudwatch::function::<FUNCTION_NAME>",
            "Parameters": {
                "FunctionName": "<LAMBDA_FUNCTION_NAME>",
                "Payload": "$"
            }
        }
    }
}
```
IAM Example

This example AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy generated by the sample project includes the least privilege necessary to execute the state machine and related resources. We recommend that you include only those permissions that are necessary in your IAM policies.

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
      {
         "Action": [
            "lambda:InvokeFunction"
         ],
         "Resource": [
            "arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:123456789012:function:example-Base64DecodeLambda-wJalrXUtnFEMI",
            "arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:123456789012:function:example-StringCleanerLambda-je7MtGbClwBF",
            "arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:123456789012:function:example-TokenizerCounterLambda-wJalrXUtnFEMI",
            "arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:123456789012:function:example-GenerateStatsLambda-je7MtGbClwBF"
         ],
         "Effect": "Allow"
      }
   ]
}
```

The following policy ensures that there are sufficient permissions for CloudWatch Logs.

```json
{
}
```
Selective Checkpointing Example (Express Workflows)

This sample project demonstrates how to combine Standard and Express Workflows by running a mock e-commerce workflow that does selective checkpointing. Deploying this sample project creates a Standard workflows state machine, a nested Express Workflows state machine, an AWS Lambda function, an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue, and an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.

For more information about Express Workflows, nested workflows, and Step Functions service integrations, see the following:

- Standard vs. Express Workflows (p. 89)
- Start Workflow Executions from a Task State (p. 136)
- Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144)

Create the State Machine and Provision Resources

1. Open the Step Functions console and choose Create a state machine.
2. Choose Run a sample project, and then choose Selective checkpointing example.

The Standard Workflows state machine Code and Visual Workflow are displayed.
After the sample project is deployed, you can view the state machine Code and Visual Workflow of the nested Express Workflow.

3. Choose Next.

The Deploy resources page is displayed, listing the resources that will be created. For this sample project, the resources include:

- A Step Functions state machine
- An Amazon SQS queue
- A Lambda function

4. Choose Deploy Resources.

   **Note**
   It can take up to 10 minutes for these resources and related IAM permissions to be created. While the Deploy resources page is displayed, you can open the Stack ID link to see which resources are being provisioned.

After the resources of the sample project are deployed do the following.

### Start a New Execution

1. Open the Step Functions console.
2. On the State machines page, choose the state machine that was created by the sample project and select Start execution.
3. On the New execution page, enter an execution name (optional), and then choose Start Execution.
4. (Optional) To help identify your execution, you can specify an ID for it in the Enter an execution name box. If you don't enter an ID, Step Functions generates a unique ID automatically.

   **Note**
   Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.
5. (Optional) Go to the newly created state machine on the Step Functions Dashboard, and then choose Start execution.
6. When an execution is complete, you can open the Step Functions console.
7. Go to your CloudWatch Logs log group and inspect the logs. The name of the log group will look like example-ExpressLogGroup-wJalrXUtFEMI.

Example State Machine Code for the Parent (Standard Workflows)

The state machine in this sample project integrates with Amazon SQS, Amazon SNS, and Step Functions Express Workflows.

Browse through this example state machine to see how Step Functions processes input from Amazon SQS and Amazon SNS, and then uses a nested Express Workflows state machine to update backend systems.

For more information about how AWS Step Functions can control other AWS services, see Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144).

```json
{
  "Comment": "An example of combining standard and express workflows to run a mock e-commerce workflow that does selective checkpointing.",
  "StartAt": "Approve Order Request",
  "States": {
    "Approve Order Request": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "Resource": "arn:<PARTITION>:states:::sqs:sendMessage.waitForTaskToken",
      "Parameters": {
        "QueueUrl": "<SQS_QUEUE_URL>",
        "MessageBody": {
          "MessageTitle": "Order Request received. Pausing workflow to wait for manual approval. ",
          "TaskToken.$": "$$.Task.Token"
        }
      },
      "Next": "Notify Order Success",
      "Catch": [
      {
        "ErrorEquals": [
          "States.ALL"
        ],
        "Next": "Notify Order Failure"
      }]}
  },
  "Notify Order Success": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "Resource": "arn:<PARTITION>:states:::sns:publish",
    "Parameters": {
      "Message": "Order has been approved. Resuming workflow.",
      "TopicArn": "<SNS_ARN>"
    },
    "Next": "Process Payment"
  },
  "Notify Order Failure": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "Resource": "arn:<PARTITION>:states:::sns:publish",
    "Parameters": {
      "Message": "Order not approved. Order failed."
    }
  }
}
```
Example State Machine Code for the Parent (Standard Workflows)

```json
"TopicArn": "<SNS_ARN>"
},
"End": true
},
"Process Payment": {
  "Type": "Task",
  "Resource": ":states:::sqs:sendMessage.waitForTaskToken",
  "Parameters": {
    "QueueUrl": "<SQS_QUEUE_URL>",
    "MessageBody": {
      "MessageTitle": "Payment sent to third-party for processing. Pausing workflow to wait for response."
    }
  }
},
"Next": "Notify Payment Success",
"Catch": [
  {
    "ErrorEquals": ["States.ALL"]
  },
  "Next": "Notify Payment Failure"
],
"Notify Payment Success": {
  "Type": "Task",
  "Resource": ":states:::sns:publish",
  "Parameters": {
    "Message": "Payment processing succeeded. Resuming workflow."
  }
},
"Next": "Workflow to Update Backend Systems"
},
"Notify Payment Failure": {
  "Type": "Task",
  "Resource": ":states:::sns:publish",
  "Parameters": {
    "Message": "Payment processing failed."
  }
},
"End": true
},
"Workflow to Update Backend Systems": {
  "Comment": "Starting an execution of an Express workflow to handle backend updates. Express workflows are fast and cost-effective for steps where checkpointing isn't required."
},
"Type": "Task",
"Resource": ":states:::states:startExecution.sync",
"Parameters": {
  "StateMachineArn": ":UPDATE_DATABASE_EXPRESS_STATE_MACHINE_ARN>
},
"Input": {
  "AWS_STEP_FUNCTIONS_STARTED_BY_EXECUTION_ID.$": "$.Execution.Id"}
},
"Next": "Ship the Package"
},
"Ship the Package": {
  "Type": "Task",
  "Resource": ":states:::sns:publish",
  "Parameters": {
    "Message": "Order and payment received, database is updated and the package is ready to ship."
  }
},
"TopicArn": "<SNS_ARN>"
},
"End": true
```
Example IAM Role for the Parent State Machine

These example AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policies generated by the sample project include the least privilege necessary to execute the state machine and related resources. We recommend that you include only those permissions that are necessary in your IAM policies.

Amazon SNS policy:

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Action": [
                "sns:Publish"
            ],
            "Effect": "Allow"
        }
    ]
}
```

Amazon SQS policy:

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Action": [
                "sqs:SendMessage"
            ],
            "Resource": "arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:123456789012:Checkpoint-SQSQueue-je7MtGbCwBF",
            "Effect": "Allow"
        }
    ]
}
```

States execution policy:

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Action": [
                "states:StartExecution",
                "states:DescribeExecution",
                "states:StopExecution"
            ],
            "Resource": "*",
            "Effect": "Allow"
        },
        {
            "Action": [
                "events:PutTargets",
                "events:PutRule",
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```
Example State Machine Code for the Nested State Machine (Express Workflows)

The state machine in this sample project updates backend information when called by the parent state machine.

Browse through this example state machine to see how Step Functions updates the different components of the mock e-commerce backend systems.

For more information about how AWS Step Functions can control other AWS services, see Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144).
Example IAM Role for Child State Machine

This example AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy generated by the sample project includes the least privilege necessary to execute the state machine and related resources. We recommend that you include only those permissions that are necessary in your IAM policies.

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Action": ["lambda:InvokeFunction"],
      "Resource": ["arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:123456789012:function:Example-UpdateDatabaseLambdaFunction-wJalrXUtFEMI"],
      "Effect": "Allow"
    }
  ]
}
```

The following policy ensures that there are sufficient permissions for CloudWatch Logs.

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": ["logs:CreateLogStream", "logs:PutLogEvents"]
    }
  ]
}
```
Build an AWS CodeBuild Project (CodeBuild, Amazon SNS)

This sample project demonstrates how to use AWS Step Functions to build an AWS CodeBuild project, run tests, and then send an Amazon SNS notification.

Create the State Machine and Provision Resources

1. Open the Step Functions console, and then choose Create a state machine.
2. Choose Sample Projects, and then choose Start a CodeBuild build.

The state machine Code and Visual Workflow are displayed.
3. Choose Next.

The Deploy resources page is displayed, listing the resources that will be created. For this sample project, the resources include:

- A CodeBuild project
- An Amazon SNS topic

4. Choose Deploy Resources.

Note
It can take up to 10 minutes for these resources and related IAM permissions to be created. While the Deploy resources page is displayed, you can open the Stack ID link to see which resources are being provisioned.

Start a New Execution

1. On the New execution page, enter an execution name (optional), and then choose Start Execution.

2. (Optional) To help identify your execution, you can specify an ID for it in the Enter an execution name box. If you don't enter an ID, Step Functions generates a unique ID automatically.

Note
Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.
3. (Optional) Go to the newly created state machine on the Step Functions Dashboard, and then choose Start execution.
4. When an execution is complete, select states on the Visual workflow, and browse the Input and Output under Step details.

Example State Machine Code

The state machine in this sample project integrates with CodeBuild and Amazon SNS.

Browse through this example state machine to see how Step Functions uses a state machine to build a CodeBuild project, and then sends an Amazon SNS topic with a message about whether the job succeeded or failed.

For more information about how Step Functions can control other AWS services, see Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144).

```json
{
  "Comment": "An example of using CodeBuild to run tests, get test results and send a notification.",
  "StartAt": "Trigger CodeBuild Build",
  "States": {
    "Trigger CodeBuild Build": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::codebuild:startBuild.sync",
      "Parameters": {
        "ProjectName": "CodeBuildProject-Dtw1jBhEYGDf"
      },
      "Next": "Get Test Results"
    },
    "Get Test Results": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::codebuild:batchGetReports",
      "Parameters": {
        "ReportArns.$": "$_.Build.ReportArns"
      },
      "Next": "All Tests Passed?"
    },
    "All Tests Passed?: ": {
      "Type": "Choice",
      "Choices": [
        {
          "Variable": ".Reports[0].Status",
          "StringEquals": "SUCCEEDED",
          "Next": "Notify Success"
        }
      ],
      "Default": "Notify Failure"
    },
    "Notify Success": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sns:publish",
      "Parameters": {
        "Message": "CodeBuild build tests succeeded",
        "TopicArn": "arn:aws:sns:sa-east-1:123456789012:StepFunctionsSample-CodeBuildExecution3da9ead6-bc1f-4441-99ac-591c140019c4-SNSTopic-EVYLVNGW8J5P"
      },
      "End": true
    },
    "Notify Failure": {
      "Type": "Task",
      "Resource": "arn:aws:states:::sns:publish",
      "Parameters": {
        "Message": "CodeBuild build tests failed",
        "TopicArn": "arn:aws:sns:sa-east-1:123456789012:StepFunctionsSample-CodeBuildExecution3da9ead6-bc1f-4441-99ac-591c140019c4-SNSTopic-EVYLVNGW8J5P"
      }
    }
  }
}
```
"Message": "CodeBuild build tests failed",
"TopicArn": "arn:aws:sns:sa-east-1:123456789012:StepFunctionsSample-
CodeBuildExecution3da9ead6-bc1f-4441-99ac-591c140019c4-SNSTopic-EVYLVNGW85JP"
},
"End": true
}
}

For information about how to configure IAM when using Step Functions with other AWS services, see IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258).
Best Practices for Step Functions

The following best practices for implementing AWS Step Functions workflows can help you optimize the performance of your implementations.

Topics
- Use Timeouts to Avoid Stuck Executions (p. 240)
- Use ARNs Instead of Passing Large Payloads (p. 240)
- Avoid Reaching the History Quota (p. 241)
- Handle Lambda Service Exceptions (p. 241)
- Avoid Latency When Polling for Activity Tasks (p. 242)
- Choosing Standard or Express Workflows (p. 242)

Use Timeouts to Avoid Stuck Executions

By default, the Amazon States Language doesn't set timeouts in state machine definitions. Without an explicit timeout, Step Functions often relies solely on a response from an activity worker to know that a task is complete. If something goes wrong and TimeoutSeconds isn't specified, an execution is stuck waiting for a response that will never come.

To avoid this, specify a reasonable timeout when you create a task in your state machine. For example:

```json
"ActivityState": {
    "Type": "Task",
    "TimeoutSeconds": 300,
    "HeartbeatSeconds": 60,
    "Next": "NextState"
}
```

For more information, see Task (p. 95) in the Amazon States Language documentation.

Use ARNs Instead of Passing Large Payloads

Executions that pass large payloads of data between states can be terminated. If the data you are passing between states might grow to over 32 KB, use Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) to store the data, and pass the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) instead of the raw data. Alternatively, adjust your implementation so that you pass smaller payloads in your executions.

For example, a state machine can pass input to an AWS Lambda function, like in the following example.

```json
{
    "StartAt":"Invoke Lambda function",
    "States":{
        "Invoke Lambda function":{
            "Type":"Task",
            "Resource":"arn:aws:states:::lambda:invoke",
            "Parameters":{
                "FunctionName": "arn:aws:lambda:us-east-2:123456789012:function:MyFunctionName",
            }
        }
    }
}
```
Rather than pass a large amount of data in the input, you could save that data in an Amazon S3 bucket, and pass the ARN of that bucket in the `Payload` parameter. Your Lambda function can then use that ARN to access the data directly. The following is example input for a state machine execution, where the data is stored in `data.json` in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```json
{
    "Data": "arn:aws:s3:::MyBucket/data.json"
}
```

For more information, see the following:

- Quotas for Standard Workflows (p. 243)
- Amazon Simple Storage Service Developer Guide
- Amazon Resource Names (ARNs)

### Avoid Reaching the History Quota

AWS Step Functions has a hard quota of 25,000 entries in the execution history. To avoid reaching this quota for long-running executions, implement a pattern that uses an AWS Lambda function that can start a new execution of your state machine to split ongoing work across multiple workflow executions.

For more information, see the Continuing as a New Execution (p. 57) tutorial.

### Handle Lambda Service Exceptions

AWS Lambda can occasionally experience transient service errors. In this case, invoking Lambda results in a 500 error, such as `ServiceException`, `AWSLambdaException`, or `SdkClientException`. As a best practice, proactively handle these exceptions in your state machine to `Retry` invoking your Lambda function, or to `Catch` the error.

Lambda errors are reported as `Lambda.ErrorName`. To retry a Lambda service exception error, you could use the following `Retry` code.

```json
"Retry": [
    {
        "ErrorEquals": [
            "Lambda.ServiceException",
            "Lambda.AWSLambdaException",
            "Lambda.SdkClientException"
        ],
        "IntervalSeconds": 2,
        "MaxAttempts": 6,
        "BackoffRate": 2
    }
]
```

**Note**

Unhandled errors in Lambda are reported as `Lambda.Unknown` in the error output. These include out-of-memory errors and function timeouts. You can match on `Lambda.Unknown`, `States.ALL`, or `States.TaskFailed` to handle these errors. When Lambda hits the maximum...
number of invocations, the error is Lambda.TooManyRequestsException. For more information about Lambda Handled and Unhandled errors, see FunctionError in the AWS Lambda Developer Guide.

For more information, see the following:

- Retrying after an Error (p. 138)
- Handling Error Conditions Using a Step Functions State Machine (p. 36)
- Lambda Invoke Errors

### Avoid Latency When Polling for Activity Tasks

The `GetActivityTask` API is designed to provide a `taskToken` exactly once. If a `taskToken` is dropped while communicating with an activity worker, a number of `GetActivityTask` requests can be blocked for 60 seconds waiting for a response until `GetActivityTask` times out.

If you only have a small number of polls waiting for a response, it’s possible that all requests will queue up behind the blocked request and stop. However, if you have a large number of outstanding polls for each activity Amazon Resource Name (ARN), and some percentage of your requests are stuck waiting, there will be many more that can still get a `taskToken` and begin to process work.

For production systems, we recommend at least 100 open polls per activity ARN’s at each point in time. If one poll gets blocked, and a portion of those polls queue up behind it, there are still many more requests that will receive a `taskToken` to process work while the `GetActivityTask` request is blocked.

To avoid these kinds of latency problems when polling for tasks:

- Implement your pollers as separate threads from the work in your activity worker implementation.
- Have at least 100 open polls per activity ARN at each point in time.

**Note**

Scaling to 100 open polls per ARN can be expensive. For example, 100 Lambda functions polling per ARN is 100 times more expensive than having a single Lambda function with 100 polling threads. To both reduce latency and minimize cost, use a language that has asynchronous I/O, and implement multiple polling threads per worker. For an example activity worker where the poller threads are separate from the work threads, see Example Activity Worker in Ruby (p. 100).

For more information on activities and activity workers see Activities (p. 99).

### Choosing Standard or Express Workflows

AWS Step Functions offers Standard Workflows as the default workflow type, with the option to choose Express Workflows.

You can choose Standard Workflows when you need long-running, durable, and auditable workflows, or Express Workflows for high-volume, event processing workloads. Your state machine executions will behave differently, depending on which Type you select. The Type you choose cannot be changed after your state machine has been created.

For detailed information on the differences between Standard and Express Workflows, see Standard vs. Express Workflows (p. 89).
Quotas

AWS Step Functions places quotas on the sizes of certain state machine parameters, such as the number of API actions that you can make during a certain time period or the number of state machines that you can define. Although these quotas are designed to prevent a misconfigured state machine from consuming all of the resources of the system, many aren’t hard quotas.

Note
If a particular stage of your state machine execution or activity execution takes too long, you can configure a state machine timeout to cause a timeout event.

Some quotas are the same for Standard workflows and Express workflows, and are shown below. Quotas that are different can be found on the Quotas for Standard Workflows (p. 243) and Quotas for Express Workflows (p. 245).

Topics
- Quotas for Standard Workflows (p. 243)
- Quotas for Express Workflows (p. 245)
- General Quotas (p. 247)
- Quotas Related to Accounts (p. 248)
- Quotas Related to API Action Throttling (p. 248)
- Restrictions Related to Tagging (p. 250)
- Requesting a Quota Increase (p. 250)

Quotas for Standard Workflows

AWS Step Functions places quotas on the sizes of certain state machine parameters, such as the number of API actions that you can make during a certain time period or the number of state machines that you can define. Although these quotas are designed to prevent a misconfigured state machine from consuming all of the resources of the system, many aren’t hard quotas.

Note
If a particular stage of your state machine execution or activity execution takes too long, you can configure a state machine timeout to cause a timeout event.

Topics
- Quotas Related to State Machine Executions (p. 243)
- Quotas Related to Task Executions (p. 244)
- Quotas Related to API Action Throttling (p. 244)
- Quotas Related to State Throttling (p. 245)
- Requesting a Quota Increase (p. 245)

Quotas Related to State Machine Executions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quota</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum execution time</td>
<td>1 year. If an execution runs for more than the 1-year maximum, it will fail with a States.Timeout error and emit a ExecutionsTimedOut CloudWatch metric.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Quotas Related to Task Executions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quota</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum task execution time</td>
<td>1 year (constrained by the maximum execution time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum time Step Functions keeps a task in the queue</td>
<td>1 year (constrained by the maximum execution time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum activity pollers per Amazon Resource Name (ARN)</td>
<td>1,000 pollers calling GetActivityTask per ARN. Exceeding this quota results in this error: “The maximum number of workers concurrently polling for activity tasks has been reached.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum input or result data size for a task, state, or execution</td>
<td>32,768 characters. This quota affects tasks (activity or Lambda function), state or execution result data, and input data when scheduling a task, entering a state, or starting an execution.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Quotas Related to API Action Throttling

Some Step Functions API actions are throttled using a token bucket scheme to maintain service bandwidth.

**Note**

Throttling quotas are per account, per AWS Region. AWS Step Functions may increase both the bucket size and refill rate at any time. Do not rely on these throttling rates to limit your costs.

Quotas In US East (N. Virginia), US West (Oregon), and Europe (Ireland)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>API Name</th>
<th>Bucket Size</th>
<th>Refill Rate per Second</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>StartExecution</td>
<td>1,300</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Quotas In All Other Regions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>API Name</th>
<th>Bucket Size</th>
<th>Refill Rate per Second</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>StartExecution</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Quotas Related to State Throttling

Step Functions state transitions are throttled using a token bucket scheme to maintain service bandwidth.

**Note**
Throttling on the StateTransition service metric is reported as ExecutionThrottled in Amazon CloudWatch. For more information, see the ExecutionThrottled CloudWatch metric (p. 285).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service Metric</th>
<th>Bucket Size</th>
<th>Refill Rate per Second</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>StateTransition — In US East (N. Virginia), US West (Oregon), and Europe (Ireland)</td>
<td>5,000</td>
<td>1,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StateTransition — All other regions</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Requesting a Quota Increase

Use the Support Center page in the AWS Management Console to request a quota increase for resources provided by AWS Step Functions on a per-Region basis. For more information, see To Request a Quota Increase in the AWS General Reference.

Quotas for Express Workflows

AWS Step Functions places quotas on the sizes of certain state machine parameters, such as the number of API actions that you can make during a certain time period or the number of state machines that you can define. Although these quotas are designed to prevent a misconfigured state machine from consuming all of the resources of the system, many aren't hard quotas.

**Note**
If a particular stage of your state machine execution takes too long, you can configure a state machine timeout to cause a timeout event.

**Topics**
- Quotas Related to State Machine Executions (p. 246)
- Quotas Related to Task Executions (p. 246)
- Quotas Related to API Action Throttling (p. 246)
- Quotas Related to State Throttling (p. 247)
- Requesting a Quota Increase (p. 245)
Quotas Related to State Machine Executions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quota</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum execution time</td>
<td>5 minutes. If an execution runs for more than the 5-minute maximum, it will fail with a States.Timeout error and emit a ExecutionsTimedOut CloudWatch metric.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum execution history size</td>
<td>Unlimited.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum execution idle time</td>
<td>5 minutes (constrained by the maximum execution time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum execution history retention time</td>
<td>To see execution history, Amazon CloudWatch Logs logging must be configured. For more information, Logging Using CloudWatch Logs (p. 300).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Quotas Related to Task Executions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quota</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum task execution time</td>
<td>5 minutes (constrained by the maximum execution time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum time Step Functions keeps a task in the queue</td>
<td>5 minutes (constrained by maximum execution time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum activity pollers per Amazon Resource Name (ARN)</td>
<td>Does not apply to Express Workflows.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum input or result data size for a task, state, or execution</td>
<td>32,768 characters. This quota affects tasks, state or execution result data, and input data when scheduling a task, entering a state, or starting an execution.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Quotas Related to API Action Throttling

Some Step Functions API actions are throttled using a token bucket scheme to maintain service bandwidth.

**Note**
Throttling quotas are per account, per AWS Region. AWS Step Functions may increase both the bucket size and refill rate at any time. Do not rely on these throttling rates to limit your costs.

Quotas for StartExecution - All Regions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>API Name</th>
<th>Bucket Size</th>
<th>Refill Rate per Second</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>StartExecution</td>
<td>6,000</td>
<td>6,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Quotas Related to State Throttling

Step Functions state transitions are throttled using a token bucket scheme to maintain service bandwidth.

**Note**
Throttling on the StateTransition service metric is reported as ExecutionThrottled in Amazon CloudWatch. For more information, see the ExecutionThrottled CloudWatch metric (p. 285).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Service Metric</th>
<th>Bucket Size</th>
<th>Refill Rate per Second</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>StateTransition — All regions</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Requesting a Quota Increase

Use the Support Center page in the AWS Management Console to request a quota increase for resources provided by AWS Step Functions on a per-Region basis. For more information, see To Request a Quota Increase in the AWS General Reference.

General Quotas

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quota</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Names in Step Functions</td>
<td>State machine, execution, and activity names must be 1–80 characters in length, must be unique for your account and AWS Region, and must contain any of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Whitespace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Wildcard characters (?, *)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Bracket characters (&lt; &gt; { } [ ])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Special characters (: ; , \</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Control characters (\u0000 - \u001f or \u007f - \u009f).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don't work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Quotas Related to Accounts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quota</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of registered activities</td>
<td>10,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of registered state machines</td>
<td>10,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of API actions</td>
<td>Beyond infrequent spikes, applications can be throttled if they make a large number of API actions in a very short period of time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum request size</td>
<td>1 MB per request. This is the total data size per Step Functions API request, including the request header and all other associated request data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum open executions per account</td>
<td>1,000,000 executions per AWS account. Exceeding this will cause an ExecutionLimitExceeded error. Does not apply to Express Workflows.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Quotas Related to API Action Throttling

Some Step Functions API actions are throttled using a token bucket scheme to maintain service bandwidth.

**Note**
Throttling quotas are per account, per AWS Region. AWS Step Functions may increase both the bucket size and refill rate at any time. Do not rely on these throttling rates to limit your costs.

Quotas In US East (N. Virginia), US West (Oregon), and Europe (Ireland)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>API Name</th>
<th>Bucket Size</th>
<th>Refill Rate per Second</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CreateActivity</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreateStateMachine</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeleteActivity</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeleteStateMachine</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DescribeActivity</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DescribeExecution</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DescribeStateMachine</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DescribeStateMachineForExecution</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GetActivityTask</td>
<td>3,000</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GetExecutionHistory</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>API Name</td>
<td>Bucket Size</td>
<td>Refill Rate per Second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ListActivities</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ListExecutions</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ListStateMachines</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ListTagsForResource</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SendTaskFailure</td>
<td>3,000</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SendTaskHeartbeat</td>
<td>3,000</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SendTaskSuccess</td>
<td>3,000</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| StartExecution         | For quotas specific to Standard Workflows, see [Quotas for Standard Workflows (p. 243)](https://aws.amazon.com)  
For quotas specific to Express Workflows, see [Quotas for Express Workflows (p. 245)](https://aws.amazon.com)  
StopExecution           | 1,000       | 200                    |
| TagResource            | 200         | 1                      |
| UntagResource          | 200         | 1                      |
| UpdateStateMachine     | 100         | 1                      |

### Quotas In All Other Regions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>API Name</th>
<th>Bucket Size</th>
<th>Refill Rate per Second</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CreateActivity</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CreateStateMachine</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeleteActivity</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeleteStateMachine</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DescribeActivity</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DescribeExecution</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DescribeStateMachine</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DescribeStateMachineForExecution</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GetActivityTask</td>
<td>1,500</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GetExecutionHistory</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ListActivities</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ListExecutions</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ListStateMachines</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Restrictions Related to Tagging

Be aware of these restrictions when tagging Step Functions resources.

**Note**
Tagging restrictions cannot be increased like other quotas.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Restriction</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum number of tags per resource</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum key length</td>
<td>128 Unicode characters in UTF-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum value length</td>
<td>256 Unicode characters in UTF-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prefix restriction</td>
<td>Do not use the <code>aws:</code> prefix in your tag names or values because it is reserved for AWS use. You can't edit or delete tag names or values with this prefix. Tags with this prefix do not count against your tags per resource quota.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Character restrictions</td>
<td>Tags may only contain Unicode letters, digits, whitespace, or these symbols: _ , : / = + - @</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Requesting a Quota Increase

Use the **Support Center** page in the AWS Management Console to request a quota increase for resources provided by AWS Step Functions on a per-Region basis. For more information, see [To Request a Quota Increase](#) in the **AWS General Reference**.
Security in AWS Step Functions

This section provides information about AWS Step Functions security and authentication.

Topics
- Data Protection in AWS Step Functions (p. 251)
- Identity and Access Management in AWS Step Functions (p. 252)
- Logging and Monitoring in AWS Step Functions (p. 284)
- Compliance Validation for AWS Step Functions (p. 303)
- Resilience in AWS Step Functions (p. 303)
- Infrastructure Security in AWS Step Functions (p. 303)
- Configuration and Vulnerability Analysis in AWS Step Functions (p. 304)

Step Functions uses IAM to control access to other AWS services and resources. For an overview of how IAM works, see Overview of Access Management in the IAM User Guide. For an overview of security credentials, see AWS Security Credentials in the Amazon Web Services General Reference.

Data Protection in AWS Step Functions

AWS Step Functions conforms to the AWS shared responsibility model, which includes regulations and guidelines for data protection. AWS is responsible for protecting the global infrastructure that runs all the AWS services. AWS maintains control over data hosted on this infrastructure, including the security configuration controls for handling customer content and personal data. AWS customers and APN partners, acting either as data controllers or data processors, are responsible for any personal data that they put in the AWS Cloud.

For data protection purposes, we recommend that you protect AWS account credentials and set up individual user accounts with AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM), so that each user is given only the permissions necessary to fulfill their job duties. We also recommend that you secure your data in the following ways:

- Use multi-factor authentication (MFA) with each account.
- Use SSL/TLS to communicate with AWS resources.
- Set up API and user activity logging with AWS CloudTrail.
- Use AWS encryption solutions, along with all default security controls within AWS services.
- Use advanced managed security services such as Amazon Macie, which assists in discovering and securing personal data that is stored in Amazon S3.

We strongly recommend that you never put sensitive identifying information, such as your customers' account numbers, into free-form fields such as a Name field. This includes when you work with Step Functions or other AWS services using the console, API, AWS CLI, or AWS SDKs. Any data that you enter into Step Functions or other services might get picked up for inclusion in diagnostic logs. When you provide a URL to an external server, don't include credentials information in the URL to validate your request to that server.
For more information about data protection, see the AWS Shared Responsibility Model and GDPR blog post on the AWS Security Blog. AWS Step Functions creates an AWS managed CMK for you and uses it on your behalf. For more information about CMKs, see Customer Master Keys (CMKs) in the AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide.

Encryption in AWS Step Functions

Encryption at Rest

Step Functions always encrypts your data at rest. Data in AWS Step Functions is encrypted at rest using transparent server-side encryption. This helps reduce the operational burden and complexity involved in protecting sensitive data. With encryption at rest, you can build security-sensitive applications that meet encryption compliance and regulatory requirements.

Encryption in Transit

Step Functions encrypts data in transit between the service and other integrated AWS services (see Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144)). All data that passes between Step Functions and integrated services is encrypted using Transport layer Security (TLS).

Identity and Access Management in AWS Step Functions

Access to AWS Step Functions requires credentials that AWS can use to authenticate your requests. Those credentials must have permissions to access AWS resources, such as retrieving event data from other AWS resources. The following sections provide details on how you can use AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) and Step Functions to help secure your resources by controlling who can access them:

- Authentication (p. 252)
- Access Control (p. 253)

Authentication

You can access AWS as any of the following types of identities:

- **AWS account root user** – When you sign up for AWS, you provide an email address and password that is associated with your account. These are your root credentials, and they provide complete access to all of your AWS resources.

  Important
  For security reasons, we recommend that you use the root credentials only to create an administrator, which is an IAM user with full permissions to your account. Then you can use this administrator to create other IAM users and roles with limited permissions. For more information, see IAM Best Practices and Creating an Admin User and Group in the IAM User Guide.

- **IAM user** – An IAM user is an identity within your account that has specific custom permissions (for example, permissions to send event data to a target in Step Functions). You can use an IAM user name and password to sign in to secure AWS webpages such as the AWS Management Console, AWS Discussion Forums, or the AWS Support Center.
In addition to a user name and password, you can also generate access keys for each user. You can use these keys when you access AWS services programmatically, either through one of the several SDKs or by using the AWS Command Line Interface (AWS CLI). The SDK and AWS CLI tools use the access keys to cryptographically sign your request. If you don't use the AWS tools, you must sign the request yourself. Step Functions supports Signature Version 4, a protocol for authenticating inbound API requests. For more information about authenticating requests, see Signature Version 4 Signing Process in the Amazon Web Services General Reference.

- **IAM role** – An IAM role is another IAM identity that you can create in your account that has specific permissions. It's similar to an IAM user, but it isn't associated with a specific person. An IAM role enables you to obtain temporary access keys that can be used to access AWS services and resources. IAM roles with temporary credentials are useful in the following situations:

  - **Federated user access** – Instead of creating an IAM user, you can use preexisting identities from AWS Directory Service, your enterprise user directory, or a web identity provider (IdP). These are known as federated users. AWS assigns a role to a federated user when access is requested through an identity provider. For more information about federated users, see Federated Users and Roles in the IAM User Guide.

  - **Cross-account access** – You can use an IAM role in your account to grant another account permissions to access your account's resources. For an example, see Tutorial: Delegate Access Across AWS Accounts Using IAM Roles in the IAM User Guide.

  - **AWS service access** – You can use an IAM role in your account to grant to an AWS service the permissions needed to access your account's resources. For example, you can create a role that allows Amazon Redshift to access an Amazon S3 bucket on your behalf and then load data stored in the bucket into an Amazon Redshift cluster. For more information, see Creating a Role to Delegate Permissions to an AWS Service in the IAM User Guide.

  - **Applications running on Amazon EC2** – Instead of storing access keys in the EC2 instance for use by applications running on the instance and making AWS API requests, you can use an IAM role to manage temporary credentials for these applications. To assign an AWS role to an EC2 instance and make it available to all of its applications, you can create an instance profile that is attached to the instance. An instance profile contains the role and enables programs running on the EC2 instance to get temporary credentials. For more information, see Using Roles for Applications on Amazon EC2 in the IAM User Guide.

**Access Control**

You can have valid credentials to authenticate your requests, but unless you have permissions you cannot create or access Step Functions resources. For example, you must have permissions to invoke AWS Lambda, Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS), and Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) targets associated with your Step Functions rules.

The following sections describe how to manage permissions for Step Functions.

- How AWS Step Functions Works with IAM (p. 254)
- Creating Granular IAM Permissions for Non-Admin Users (p. 254)
- Amazon VPC Endpoints for Step Functions (p. 257)
How AWS Step Functions Works with IAM

AWS Step Functions can execute code and access AWS resources (such as invoking an AWS Lambda function). To maintain security, you must grant Step Functions access to those resources by using an IAM role.

The Tutorials for Step Functions (p. 17) in this guide enable you to take advantage of automatically generated IAM roles that are valid for the AWS Region in which you create the state machine. To create your own IAM role for a state machine, follow the steps in this section.

In this example, you create an IAM role with permission to invoke a Lambda function.

Create a role for Step Functions

1. Sign in to the IAM console, and then choose Roles, Create role.
2. On the Select type of trusted entity page, under AWS service, select Step Functions from the list, and then choose Next: Permissions.
3. On the Attached permissions policy page, choose Next: Review.
4. On the Review page, enter StepFunctionsLambdaRole for Role Name, and then choose Create role.

The IAM role appears in the list of roles.

Attach an Inline Policy

Step Functions can control other services directly in a task state. Attach inline policies to allow Step Functions to access the API actions of the services you need to control.

1. Open the IAM console, choose Roles, search for your Step Functions role, and select that role.
2. Select Add inline policy.
3. Use the Visual editor or the JSON tab to create policies for your role.

For more information about how AWS Step Functions can control other AWS services, see Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144).

Note
For examples of IAM policies created by the Step Functions console, see IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258).

Creating Granular IAM Permissions for Non-Admin Users

The default managed policies in IAM, such as ReadOnly, don't fully cover all types of AWS Step Functions permissions. This section describes these different types of permissions and provides some example configurations.

Step Functions has four categories of permissions. Depending on what access you want to provide to a user, you can control access by using permissions in these categories.
Service-Level Permissions (p. 255)

Apply to components of the API that don't act on a specific resource.

State Machine-Level Permissions (p. 255)

Apply to all API components that act on a specific state machine.

Execution-Level Permissions (p. 256)

Apply to all API components that act on a specific execution.

Activity-Level Permissions (p. 256)

Apply to all API components that act on a specific activity or on a particular instance of an activity.

Service-Level Permissions

This permission level applies to all API actions that don't act on a specific resource. These include CreateStateMachine, CreateActivity, ListStateMachine, and ListActivities.

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "states:ListStateMachines",
                "states:ListActivities",
                "states:CreateStateMachine",
                "states:CreateActivity"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:states::*:*
            ]
        },
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "iam:PassRole"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:iam:::role/my-execution-role"
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

State Machine-Level Permissions

This permission level applies to all API actions that act on a specific state machine. These API operations require the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the state machine as part of the request, such as DeleteStateMachine, DescribeStateMachine, StartExecution, and ListExecutions.

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "states:DescribeStateMachine",
                "states:StartExecution",
                "states:DescribeExecution",
                "states:ListExecutions",
                "states:ListActivities",
                "states:ListStateMachines"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:states:::state-machine/your-state-machine"
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```


```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "states:DescribeExecution",
        "states:DescribeStateMachineForExecution",
        "states:GetExecutionHistory",
        "states:StopExecution"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:states:*:*:stateMachine:StateMachinePrefix*"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

### Execution-Level Permissions

This permission level applies to all the API actions that act on a specific execution. These API operations require the ARN of the execution as part of the request, such as DescribeExecution, GetExecutionHistory, and StopExecution.

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "states:DescribeActivity",
        "states:DeleteActivity",
        "states:GetActivityTask",
        "states:SendTaskSuccess",
        "states:SendTaskFailure",
        "states:SendTaskHeartbeat"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:states:*:*:activity:ActivityPrefix*"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

### Activity-Level Permissions

This permission level applies to all the API actions that act on a specific activity or on a particular instance of it. These API operations require the ARN of the activity or the token of the instance as part of the request, such as DeleteActivity, DescribeActivity, GetActivityTask, SendTaskSuccess, SendTaskFailure, and SendTaskHeartbeat.
Amazon VPC Endpoints for Step Functions

If you use Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC) to host your AWS resources, you can establish a connection between your Amazon VPC and AWS Step Functions workflows. You can use this connection with your Step Functions workflows without crossing the public internet.

Amazon VPC lets you launch AWS resources in a custom virtual network. You can use a VPC to control your network settings, such as the IP address range, subnets, route tables, and network gateways. For more information about VPCs, see the Amazon VPC User Guide.

To connect your Amazon VPC to Step Functions, you must first define an interface VPC endpoint, which lets you connect your VPC to other AWS services. The endpoint provides reliable, scalable connectivity, without requiring an internet gateway, network address translation (NAT) instance, or VPN connection. For more information, see Interface VPC Endpoints (AWS PrivateLink) in the Amazon VPC User Guide.

Creating the Endpoint

You can create an AWS Step Functions endpoint in your VPC using the AWS Management Console, the AWS Command Line Interface (AWS CLI), an AWS SDK, the AWS Step Functions API, or AWS CloudFormation.

For information about creating and configuring an endpoint using the Amazon VPC console or the AWS CLI, see Creating an Interface Endpoint in the Amazon VPC User Guide.

Note
When you create an endpoint, specify Step Functions as the service that you want your VPC to connect to. In the Amazon VPC console, service names vary based on the AWS Region. For example, if you choose US East (N. Virginia), the service name is com.amazonaws.us-east-1.states.

For information about creating and configuring an endpoint using AWS CloudFormation, see the AWS::EC2::VPCEndpoint resource in the AWS CloudFormation User Guide.

Amazon VPC Endpoint Policies

To control connectivity access to Step Functions you can attach an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) endpoint policy while creating an Amazon VPC endpoint. You can create complex IAM rules by attaching multiple endpoint policies. For more information, see:

• Amazon Virtual Private Cloud Endpoint Policies for Step Functions (p. 257)
• Creating Granular IAM Permissions for Non-Admin Users (p. 254)
• Controlling Access to Services with VPC Endpoints

Amazon Virtual Private Cloud Endpoint Policies for Step Functions

You can create a Amazon VPC endpoint policy for Step Functions in which you specify the following:

• The principal that can perform actions.
• The actions that can be performed.
The resources on which the actions can be performed.

The following example shows an Amazon VPC endpoint policy that allows one IAM user to create state machines, and denies all IAM users permission to delete state machines. The example policy also grants all IAM users execution permission.

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Action": "*Execution",
            "Resource": "*",
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": "*",
        },
        {
            "Action": "states:CreateStateMachine",
            "Resource": "*",
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {
                "AWS": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyUser"
            }
        },
        {
            "Action": "states:DeleteStateMachine",
            "Resource": "*",
            "Effect": "Deny",
            "Principal": "*",
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information about creating endpoint policies, see the following:

- Creating Granular IAM Permissions for Non-Admin Users (p. 254)
- Controlling Access to Services with VPC Endpoints

### IAM Policies for Integrated Services

When you create a state machine in the AWS Step Functions console, Step Functions produces an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy based on the resources used in your state machine definition.

The following examples show how Step Functions generates an IAM policy based on your state machine definition. Items in the example code such as `[[resourceName]]` are replaced with the static resources listed in your state machine definition. If you have multiple static resources, there will be an entry for each in the IAM role.

### Dynamic vs. Static Resources

Static resources are defined directly in the task state of your state machine. When you include the information about the API actions you call directly in your task states, Step Functions creates an IAM role for only those resources.

Dynamic resources are those that are passed in to your state input, and accessed using a Path (see Paths (p. 121)). If you are passing dynamic resources to your task, Step Functions will create a more privileged policy that specifies: "Resource": "#".
Request Response vs. Run a Job or Wait for Callback IAM Policies

For connections using the Run a Job (p. 146) or Wait for Callback (p. 146) patterns (those ending in \texttt{.sync} or \texttt{.waitForTaskToken}), additional permissions are needed to monitor and receive a response from the API actions of connected services. The related policies need more permissions than nonsynchronous connected services. See Service Integration Patterns (p. 146) for information about synchronous connections.

\textbf{Note}

Review these templates to understand how Step Functions creates your IAM policies, and as an example of how to manually create IAM policies for Step Functions when working with other AWS services. For more information about Step Functions service integration, see Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144).

\section*{Topics}
- AWS Lambda (p. 259)
- AWS Batch (p. 260)
- Amazon DynamoDB (p. 260)
- Amazon ECS/AWS Fargate (p. 261)
- Amazon Simple Notification Service (p. 263)
- Amazon Simple Queue Service (p. 264)
- AWS Glue (p. 265)
- Amazon SageMaker (p. 265)
- Amazon EMR (p. 272)
- AWS CodeBuild (p. 277)
- AWS Step Functions (p. 281)
- Activities or No Tasks (p. 283)

\section*{AWS Lambda}

AWS Step Functions generates an IAM policy based on your state machine definition. For a state machine with two AWS Lambda task states that call \texttt{function1} and \texttt{function2}, a policy with \texttt{lambda:Invoke} permissions for the two functions must be used.

This is shown in the following example.

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "lambda:InvokeFunction"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:lambda:\[\{region\}\]:\[\{accountId\}\]:function:\[\{function1\}\]",
                "arn:aws:lambda:\[\{region\}\]:\[\{accountId\}\]:function:\[\{function2\}\]"
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```
AWS Batch

These example templates show how AWS Step Functions generates IAM policies based on the resources in your state machine definition. For more information, see:

- IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258)
- Service Integration Patterns (p. 146)

AWS Batch doesn't support resource-level access control. You must use "Resource": "*".

Run a Job (.sync)

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "batch:SubmitJob",
        "batch:DescribeJobs",
        "batch:TerminateJob"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "events:PutTargets",
        "events:PutRule",
        "events:DescribeRule"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:events:[[region]]:[[accountId]]:rule/StepFunctionsGetEventsForBatchJobsRule"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

Request Response and Callback (.waitForTaskToken)

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "batch:SubmitJob"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}
```

Amazon DynamoDB

These example templates show how AWS Step Functions generates IAM policies based on the resources in your state machine definition. For more information, see:
Static resources

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "dynamodb:GetItem",
                "dynamodb:PutItem",
                "dynamodb:UpdateItem",
                "dynamodb:DeleteItem"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:dynamodb:[region]:[[accountId]]:table/[tableName]
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

Dynamic resources

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "dynamodb:GetItem",
                "dynamodb:PutItem",
                "dynamodb:UpdateItem",
                "dynamodb:DeleteItem"
            ],
            "Resource": "*
        }
    ]
}
```

Amazon ECS/AWS Fargate

These example templates show how AWS Step Functions generates IAM policies based on the resources in your state machine definition. For more information, see:

- IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258)
- Service Integration Patterns (p. 146)

Because the value for TaskId is not known until the task is submitted, Step Functions creates a more privileged "Resource": "*" IAM policy.

**Note**

You can only stop Amazon Elastic Container Service (Amazon ECS) tasks that were started by Step Functions, despite the "*" IAM policy.

Run a Job (.sync)

**Static resources**
IAM Policies for Integrated Services

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ecs:RunTask"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:ecs:[[region]]:[[accountId]]:task-definition/[[taskDefinition]]"
      ]
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ecs:StopTask",
        "ecs:DescribeTasks"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "events:PutTargets",
        "events:PutRule",
        "events:DescribeRule"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:events:[[region]]:[[accountId]]:rule/StepFunctionsGetEventsForECSTaskRule"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

Dynamic resources

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ecs:RunTask",
        "ecs:StopTask",
        "ecs:DescribeTasks"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "events:PutTargets",
        "events:PutRule",
        "events:DescribeRule"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:events:[[region]]:[[accountId]]:rule/StepFunctionsGetEventsForECSTaskRule"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```
Request Response and Callback (\$waitForTaskToken)

**Static resources**

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
       {
           "Effect": "Allow",
           "Action": [
               "ecs:RunTask"
           ],
           "Resource": ["arn:aws:ecs:[region]:[[accountId]]:task-definition/[[taskDefinition]]"
       }
   ]
}
```

**Dynamic resources**

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
       {
           "Effect": "Allow",
           "Action": ["ecs:RunTask"],
           "Resource": "*
       }
   ]
}
```

**Amazon Simple Notification Service**

These example templates show how AWS Step Functions generates IAM policies based on the resources in your state machine definition. For more information, see:

- IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258)
- Service Integration Patterns (p. 146)

**Static resources**

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
       {
           "Effect": "Allow",
           "Action": ["sns:Publish"],
           "Resource": ["arn:aws:sns:[region]:[[accountId]]:[[topicName]]"]
       }
   ]
}
```
Resources based on a Path, or publishing to TargetArn or PhoneNumber

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": ["sns:Publish"],
            "Resource": "*"
        }
    ]
}
```

**Amazon Simple Queue Service**

These example templates show how AWS Step Functions generates IAM policies based on the resources in your state machine definition. For more information, see:

- IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258)
- Service Integration Patterns (p. 146)

**Static resources**

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": ["sqs:SendMessage"],
            "Resource": ["arn:aws:sqs:[region]:[accountId]:[queueName]"
        }
    ]
}
```

**Dynamic resources**

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": ["sqs:SendMessage"],
            "Resource": "*"
        }
    ]
}
```
AWS Glue

These example templates show how AWS Step Functions generates IAM policies based on the resources in your state machine definition. For more information, see:

- IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258)
- Service Integration Patterns (p. 146)

AWS Glue does not have resource-based control.

Run a Job (.sync)

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
      {
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Action": [
            "glue:StartJobRun",
            "glue:GetJobRun",
            "glue:GetJobRuns",
            "glue:BatchStopJobRun"
         ],
         "Resource": "*"
      }
   ]
}
```

Request Response and Callback (.waitForTaskToken)

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
      {
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Action": ["glue:StartJobRun"],
         "Resource": "*"
      }
   ]
}
```

Amazon SageMaker

These example templates show how AWS Step Functions generates IAM policies based on the resources in your state machine definition. For more information, see:

- IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258)
- Service Integration Patterns (p. 146)

**Note**

For these examples, `[[roleArn]]` refers to the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the IAM role that Amazon SageMaker uses to access model artifacts and docker images for deployment.
on ML compute instances, or for batch transform jobs. For more information, see Amazon SageMaker Roles.

Topics

- CreateTrainingJob (p. 266)
- CreateTransformJob (p. 269)

CreateTrainingJob

Static resources

Run a Job (sync)

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "sagemaker:CreateTrainingJob",
                "sagemaker:DescribeTrainingJob",
                "sagemaker:StopTrainingJob"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:sagemaker:[region]:[accountId]:training-job/[[trainingJobName]]*
            ]
        },
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "sagemaker:ListTags"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "*"
            ]
        },
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "iam:PassRole"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "[[roleArn]]"
            ],
            "Condition": {
                "StringEquals": {
                    "iam:PassedToService": "sagemaker.amazonaws.com"
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "events:PutTargets",
                "events:PutRule",
                "events:DescribeRule"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:events:[region]:[accountId]:rule/StepFunctionsGetEventsForSageMakerTrainingJobsRule"
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```
IAM Policies for Integrated Services

Dynamic resources
.sync or .waitForTaskToken

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": ["sagemaker:CreateTrainingJob", "sagemaker:DescribeTrainingJob", "sagemaker:StopTrainingJob"],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:sagemaker:[region]:[accountId]:training-job/*"
      ]
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": ["iam:PassRole"],
      "Resource": ["[roleArn]"],
      "Condition": {
        "StringEquals": {"iam:PassedToService": "sagemaker.amazonaws.com"}
      }
    }
  ]
}
```
IAM Policies for Integrated Services

Request Response and Callback (.waitForTaskToken)

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": ["sagemaker:CreateTrainingJob"],
      "Resource": ["arn:aws:sagemaker:{{region}}:{{accountId}}:training-job/*"]
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": ["sagemaker:ListTags"],
      "Resource": ["*"]
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": ["sagemaker:ListTags"],
      "Resource": ["*"]
    }
  ]
}
```
"iam:PassRole"
],
"Resource": [
  "[[roleArn]]"
],
"Condition": {
  "StringEquals": {
    "iam:PassedToService": "sagemaker.amazonaws.com"
  }
}
}
]

CreateTransformJob

**Note**
AWS Step Functions will not automatically create a policy for CreateTransformJob when you create a state machine that integrates with Amazon SageMaker. You must attach an inline policy to the created role based on one of the following IAM examples.

**Static resources**

Run a Job (sync)

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "sagemaker:CreateTransformJob",
        "sagemaker:DescribeTransformJob",
        "sagemaker:StopTransformJob"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:sagemaker:{{region}}:{{accountId}}:transform-job/{{transformJobName}}**"
      ]
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "sagemaker:ListTags"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "*"
      ]
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "iam:PassRole"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "[[roleArn]]"
      ],
      "Condition": {
        "StringEquals": {
          "iam:PassedToService": "sagemaker.amazonaws.com"
        }
      }
    }
  ]
}

269
IAM Policies for Integrated Services

{  
  "Effect": "Allow",
  "Action": [
    "events:PutTargets",
    "events:PutRule",
    "events:DescribeRule"
  ],
  "Resource": [
    "arn:aws:events:{{region}}:{{accountId}}:rule/StepFunctionsGetEventsForSageMakerTransformJobsRule"
  ]
}

Request Response and Callback (.waitForTaskToken)

{  
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "sagemaker:CreateTransformJob"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:sagemaker:{{region}}:{{accountId}}:transform-job/{{transformJobName}}*"
      ]
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "sagemaker:ListTags"
      ],
      "Resource": [  
        "*"
      ]
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "iam:PassRole"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "{{roleArn}}"
      ],
      "Condition": {
        "StringEquals": {
          "iam:PassedToService": "sagemaker.amazonaws.com"
        }
      }
    }
  ]
}

Dynamic resources
Run a Job (sync)

```json
```

Request Response and Callback (.waitForTaskToken)

```json
```
Amazon EMR

These example templates show how AWS Step Functions generates IAM policies based on the resources in your state machine definition. For more information, see:

- IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258)
- Service Integration Patterns (p. 146)

addStep

Static resources

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "elasticmapreduce:AddJobFlowSteps",
        "elasticmapreduce:DescribeStep",
        "elasticmapreduce:CancelSteps"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:elasticmapreduce:{{region}}:{{accountId}}:cluster/{{clusterId}}"
      ]
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "elasticmapreduce:PassRole"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "{{roleArn}}"
      ],
      "Condition": {
        "StringEquals": {
          "iam:PassedToService": "elasticmapreduce.amazonaws.com"
        }
      }
    }
  ]
}
```
Dynamic resources

{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
   {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
         "elasticmapreduce:PutTargets",
         "elasticmapreduce:PutRule",
         "elasticmapreduce:DescribeStep",
         "elasticmapreduce:CancelSteps"
      ],
      "Resource": ["arn:aws:elasticmapreduce:*:*:cluster/*"]
   },
   {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
         "events:PutTargets",
         "events:PutRule",
         "events:DescribeRule"
      ],
      "Resource": ["arn:aws:events:[region]:[accountId]:rule/StepFunctionsGetEventForEMRAddJobFlowStepsRule"]
   }
   ]
}

cancelStep

Static resources

{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
   {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": "elasticmapreduce:CancelSteps",
      "Resource": ["arn:aws:elasticmapreduce:[region]:[accountId]:cluster/[[clusterId]]"]
   }
   ]
}

Dynamic resources

{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
   {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": ["events:PutTargets", "events:PutRule", "events:DescribeRule"]
   },
   {
      "Effect": "Allow",
   }
   ]
}
"Statement": [
  {
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": "elasticmapreduce:CancelSteps",
    "Resource": "arn:aws:elasticmapreduce:::cluster/*"
  }
]

createCluster

Static resources

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Resource": "*"
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": "iam:PassRole",
      "Resource": [ "arn:aws:iam::{account}::role/[[roleName]]" ]
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [ "events:PutTargets", "events:PutRule", "events:DescribeRule" ],
      "Resource": [ "arn:aws:events::{region}::{accountId}:rule/StepFunctionsGetEventForEMRRunJobFlowRule" ]
    }
  ]
}

setClusterTerminationProtection

Static resources

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": "elasticmapreduce:SetTerminationProtection",
      "Resource": [ "arn:aws:elasticmapreduce::{region}::{accountId}:cluster/[[clusterId]]" ]
    }
  ]
Dynamic resources

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": "elasticmapreduce:SetTerminationProtection",
            "Resource": "arn:aws:elasticmapreduce:*:*:cluster/*"
        }
    ]
}
```

modifyInstanceFleetByName

Static resources

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "elasticmapreduce:ModifyInstanceFleet",
                "elasticmapreduce:ListInstanceFleets"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:elasticmapreduce:REGION:[accountId]:cluster/CLUSTER_ID"
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

Dynamic resources

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "elasticmapreduce:ModifyInstanceFleet",
                "elasticmapreduce:ListInstanceFleets"
            ],
            "Resource": "arn:aws:elasticmapreduce:*:*:cluster/*"
        }
    ]
}
```

modifyInstanceGroupByName

Static resources

```json
{
}
```
"Version": "2012-10-17",
"Statement": [
  {
    "Effect": "Allow",
    "Action": [
      "elasticmapreduce:ModifyInstanceGroups",
      "elasticmapreduce:ListInstanceGroups"
    ],
    "Resource": [
      "arn:aws:elasticmapreduce:[region]:[[accountId]]:cluster/[[clusterId]]"
    ]
  }
]

Dynamic resources

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "elasticmapreduce:ModifyInstanceGroups",
        "elasticmapreduce:ListInstanceGroups"
      ],
      "Resource": "*
    }
  ]
}

terminateCluster

Static resources

{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "elasticmapreduce:TerminateJobFlows",
        "elasticmapreduce:DescribeCluster"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:elasticmapreduce:[region]:[[accountId]]:cluster/[[clusterId]]"
      ]
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "events:PutTargets",
        "events:PutRule",
        "events:DescribeRule"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:events:[region]:[[accountId]]:rule/StepFunctionsGetEventForEMRSTerminateJobFlowsRule"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
Dynamic resources

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "elasticmapreduce:TerminateJobFlows",
                "elasticmapreduce:DescribeCluster"
            ],
            "Resource": "arn:aws:elasticmapreduce::*:cluster/*"
        },
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "events:PutTargets",
                "events:PutRule",
                "events:DescribeRule"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:events:[region]:[accountID]:rule/StepFunctionsGetEventForEMRTerminateJobFlowsRule"
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

AWS CodeBuild

These example templates show how AWS Step Functions generates IAM policies based on the resources in your state machine definition. For more information, see:

- IAM Policies for Integrated Services (p. 258)
- Service Integration Patterns (p. 146)

Resources:

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Action": ["sns:Publish"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:sns:sa-east-1:123456789012:StepFunctionsSample-CodeBuildExecution111-2222-3333-wJalrXUtFEMI-SNSTopic-bPxRfiCYEXAMPLEKEY"
            ],
            "Effect": "Allow"
        },
        {
            "Action": [
                "codebuild:StartBuild",
                "codebuild:StopBuild",
                "codebuild:BatchGetBuilds",
                "codebuild:BatchGetReports"
            ],
            "Resource": "*",
            "Effect": "Allow"
        }
    ]
}
```
IAM Policies for Integrated Services

```
{
  "Action": [
    "events:PutTargets",
    "events:PutRule",
    "events:DescribeRule"
  ],
  "Resource": [
    "arn:aws:events:sa-east-1:123456789012:rule/StepFunctionsGetEventForCodeBuildStartBuildRule"
  ],
  "Effect": "Allow"
}
```

### StartBuild

**Static resources**

**Run a Job (sync)**

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "codebuild:StartBuild",
        "codebuild:StopBuild",
        "codebuild:BatchGetBuilds"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:codebuild:sa-east-1:123456789012:project/StepFunctionsGetEventForCodeBuildStartBuildRule"
      ]
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "events:PutTargets",
        "events:PutRule",
        "events:DescribeRule"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:events:sa-east-1:123456789012:rule/StepFunctionsGetEventForCodeBuildStartBuildRule"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

### Request Response

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "codebuild:StartBuild"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:codebuild:sa-east-1:123456789012:project/StepFunctionsGetEventForCodeBuildStartBuildRule"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```
Dynamic resources

Run a Job (.sync)

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
      {
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Action": ["codebuild:StartBuild",
                     "codebuild:StopBuild",
                     "codebuild:BatchGetBuilds"
                  ],
         "Resource": ["arn:aws:codebuild:[[region]]::*:project/**"]
      },
      {
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Action": ["events:PutTargets",
                     "events:PutRule",
                     "events:DescribeRule"
                  ],
         "Resource": ["arn:aws:events:[[region]]:[[accountId]]:rule/StepFunctionsGetEventForCodeBuildStartBuildRule"
                  ]
      }
   ]
}
```

Request Response

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
      {
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Action": ["codebuild:StartBuild"
                  ],
         "Resource": ["arn:aws:codebuild:[[region]]::*:project/**"]
      }
   ]
}
```

StopBuild

Static resources


Dynamic resources

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": ["codebuild:StopBuild"],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:codebuild:[]:[]:project/[]"
      ]
   }
  ]
}
```

BatchDeleteBuilds

Static resources

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": ["codebuild:BatchDeleteBuilds"],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:codebuild:[]:[]:project/[]"
      ]
   }
  ]
}
```

Dynamic resources

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": ["codebuild:BatchDeleteBuilds"
    }
  ]
}
```
IAM Policies for Integrated Services

BatchGetReports

**Static resources**

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
      {
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Action": ["codebuild:BatchGetReports"],
         "Resource": ["arn:aws:codebuild:#[region]:*:project/*"]
      }
   ]
}
```

**Dynamic resources**

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
      {
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Action": ["codebuild:BatchGetReports"],
         "Resource": ["arn:aws:codebuild:#[region]:#[accountId]:report-group/#[reportName]"
      }
   ]
}
```

**AWS Step Functions**

For a state machine that calls `StartExecution` for a single nested workflow execution, use an IAM policy that limits permissions to that state machine.

```json
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
      {
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Action": ["states:StartExecution"],
         "Resource": ["arn:aws:states:#[region]:#[accountId]:stateMachine:#[stateMachineName]"
      }
   ]
}
```
For more information, see the following:

- Service Integrations (p. 144)
- Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150)
- AWS Step Functions (p. 178)

**Synchronous**

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "states:StartExecution"
            ],
        },
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "states:DescribeExecution",
                "states:StopExecution"
            ],
            "Resource": "*"
        },
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "events:PutTargets",
                "events:PutRule",
                "events:DescribeRule"
            ],
            "Resource": "arn:aws:events:region:account-id:rule/StepFunctionsGetEventsForStepFunctionsExecutionRule"
        }
    ]
}
```

**Asynchronous**

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "states:StartExecution"
            ],
        }
    ]
}
```
For more information about nested workflow executions, see Start Workflow Executions from a Task State (p. 136).

**Activities or No Tasks**

For a state machine that has only Activity tasks, or no tasks at all, use an IAM policy that denies access to all actions and resources.

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Deny",
      "Action": "*",
      "Resource": "*
    }
  ]
}
```

For more information about using Activity tasks, see Activities (p. 99).

**Tag-based Policies**

Step Functions supports policies based on tags. For example, you could restrict access to all Step Functions resources that include a tag with the key environment and the value production.

```json
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Deny",
      "Action": [
        "states:TagResource",
        "states:UntagResource",
        "states:DeleteActivity",
        "states:DeleteStateMachine",
        "states:StopExecution"
      ],
      "Resource": "*",
      "Condition": {
        "StringEquals": {"aws:ResourceTag/environment": "production"}
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

This policy will Deny the ability to delete state machines or activities, stop executions, and add or delete new tags for all resources that have been tagged as environment/production.

For more information about tagging, see the following:

- Tagging in Step Functions (p. 181)
Logging and Monitoring in AWS Step Functions

This section provides information about logging and monitoring in AWS Step Functions.

Topics
- Monitoring Step Functions Using CloudWatch (p. 284)
- CloudWatch Events for Step Functions Execution Status Changes (p. 292)
- Logging Step Functions Using AWS CloudTrail (p. 296)
- Logging Using CloudWatch Logs (p. 300)

Monitoring Step Functions Using CloudWatch

Monitoring is an important part of maintaining the reliability, availability, and performance of AWS Step Functions and your AWS solutions. You should collect as much monitoring data from the AWS services that you use so that you can more easily debug any multi-point failures. Before you start monitoring Step Functions, you should create a monitoring plan that answers the following questions:

- What are your monitoring goals?
- What resources will you monitor?
- How often will you monitor these resources?
- What monitoring tools will you use?
- Who will perform the monitoring tasks?
- Who should be notified when something goes wrong?

The next step is to establish a baseline for normal Step Functions performance in your environment. To do this, measure performance at various times and under different load conditions. As you monitor Step Functions, consider storing historical monitoring data. Such data can give you a baseline to compare against current performance data, to identify normal performance patterns and performance anomalies, and to devise ways to address issues.

For example, with Step Functions, you can monitor how many activities or AWS Lambda tasks fail due to a heartbeat timeout. When performance falls outside your established baseline, you might have to change your heartbeat interval.

To establish a baseline you should, at a minimum, monitor the following metrics:

- ActivitiesStarted
- ActivitiesTimedOut
- ExecutionsStarted
- ExecutionsTimedOut
- LambdaFunctionsStarted
- LambdaFunctionsTimedOut

The following sections describe metrics that Step Functions provides to Amazon CloudWatch. You can use these metrics to track your state machines and activities and to set alarms on threshold values. You can view metrics using the AWS Management Console.
**Metrics That Report a Time Interval**

Some of the Step Functions CloudWatch metrics are *time intervals*, always measured in milliseconds. These metrics generally correspond to stages of your execution for which you can set state machine, activity, and Lambda function timeouts, with descriptive names.

For example, the `ActivityRunTime` metric measures the time it takes for an activity to complete after it begins to execute. You can set a timeout value for the same time period.

In the CloudWatch console, you can get the best results if you choose *average* as the display statistic for time interval metrics.

**Metrics That Report a Count**

Some of the Step Functions CloudWatch metrics report results as a *count*. For example, `ExecutionsFailed` records the number of failed state machine executions.

In the CloudWatch console, you can get the best results if you choose *sum* as the display statistic for count metrics.

**Execution Metrics**

The `AWS/States` namespace includes the following metrics for Step Functions executions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ExecutionTime</td>
<td>The interval, in milliseconds, between the time the execution starts and the time it closes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExecutionThrottled</td>
<td>The number of <code>StateEntered</code> events and retries that have been throttled. This is related to <code>StateTransition</code> throttling. For more information, see Quotas Related to State Throttling in the <em>AWS Step Functions Developer Guide</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExecutionsAborted</td>
<td>The number of aborted or terminated executions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExecutionsFailed</td>
<td>The number of failed executions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExecutionsStarted</td>
<td>The number of started executions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExecutionsSucceeded</td>
<td>The number of successfully completed executions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Metric

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ExecutionsTimedOut</td>
<td>The number of executions that time out for any reason.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Dimension for Step Functions Execution Metrics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimension</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>StateMachineArn</td>
<td>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the state machine for the execution in question.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Activity Metrics

The `AWS/States` namespace includes the following metrics for Step Functions activities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ActivityRunTime</td>
<td>The interval, in milliseconds, between the time the activity starts and the time it closes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityScheduleTime</td>
<td>The interval, in milliseconds, for which the activity stays in the schedule state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivityTime</td>
<td>The interval, in milliseconds, between the time the activity is scheduled and the time it closes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivitiesFailed</td>
<td>The number of failed activities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivitiesHeartbeatTimedOut</td>
<td>The number of activities that time out due to a heartbeat timeout.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivitiesScheduled</td>
<td>The number of scheduled activities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivitiesStarted</td>
<td>The number of started activities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivitiesSucceeded</td>
<td>The number of successfully completed activities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActivitiesTimedOut</td>
<td>The number of activities that time out on close.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Dimension for Step Functions Activity Metrics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimension</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ActivityArn</td>
<td>The ARN of the activity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Lambda Function Metrics

The `AWS/States` namespace includes the following metrics for Step Functions Lambda functions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LambdaFunctionRunTime</td>
<td>The interval, in milliseconds, between the time the Lambda function starts and the time it closes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Amazon CloudWatch Metrics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LambdaFunctionScheduleTime</td>
<td>The interval, in milliseconds, for which the Lambda function stays in the schedule state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LambdaFunctionTime</td>
<td>The interval, in milliseconds, between the time the Lambda function is scheduled and the time it closes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LambdaFunctionsFailed</td>
<td>The number of failed Lambda functions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LambdaFunctionsScheduled</td>
<td>The number of scheduled Lambda functions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LambdaFunctionsStarted</td>
<td>The number of started Lambda functions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LambdaFunctionsSucceeded</td>
<td>The number of successfully completed Lambda functions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LambdaFunctionsTimedOut</td>
<td>The number of Lambda functions that time out on close.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Dimension for Step Functions Lambda Function Metrics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimension</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LambdaFunctionArn</td>
<td>The ARN of the Lambda function.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Service Integration Metrics

The AWS/States namespace includes the following metrics for Step Functions service integrations. For more information, see [Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions](p. 144).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ServiceIntegrationRunTime</td>
<td>The interval, in milliseconds, between the time the Service Task starts and the time it closes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServiceIntegrationScheduleTime</td>
<td>The interval, in milliseconds, for which the Service Task stays in the schedule state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServiceIntegrationTime</td>
<td>The interval, in milliseconds, between the time the Service Task is scheduled and the time it closes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServiceIntegrationsFailed</td>
<td>The number of failed Service Tasks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServiceIntegrationsScheduled</td>
<td>The number of scheduled Service Tasks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServiceIntegrationsStarted</td>
<td>The number of started Service Tasks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServiceIntegrationsSucceeded</td>
<td>The number of successfully completed Service Tasks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ServiceIntegrationsTimedOut</td>
<td>The number of Service Tasks that time out on close.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Dimension for Step Functions Service Integration Metrics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimension</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ServiceIntegrationResourceArn</td>
<td>The resource ARN of the integrated service.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Service Metrics

The AWS/States namespace includes the following metrics for the Step Functions service.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ThrottledEvents</td>
<td>The count of requests that have been throttled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProvisionedBucketSize</td>
<td>The count of available requests per second.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProvisionedRefillRate</td>
<td>The count of requests per second that are allowed into the bucket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConsumedCapacity</td>
<td>The count of requests per second.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dimension for Step Functions Service Metrics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimension</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>StateTransition</td>
<td>Filters data to show State Transitions metrics.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

API Metrics

The AWS/States namespace includes the following metrics for the Step Functions API.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metric</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ThrottledEvents</td>
<td>The count of requests that have been throttled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProvisionedBucketSize</td>
<td>The count of available requests per second.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ProvisionedRefillRate</td>
<td>The count of requests per second that are allowed into the bucket.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConsumedCapacity</td>
<td>The count of requests per second.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dimension for Step Functions API Metrics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dimension</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>APIName</td>
<td>Filters data to an API of the specified API name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Viewing Metrics for Step Functions

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the CloudWatch console.
2. Choose Metrics, and on the All Metrics tab, choose States.
If you ran any executions recently, you will see up to three types of metrics:

- **Execution Metrics**
- **Activity Function Metrics**
- **Lambda Function Metrics**

3. Choose a metric type to see a list of metrics.

- To sort your metrics by **Metric Name** or **StateMachineArn**, use the column headings.
- To view graphs for a metric, choose the box next to the metric on the list. You can change the graph parameters using the time range controls above the graph view.

You can choose custom time ranges using relative or absolute values (specific days and times). You can also use the dropdown list to display values as lines, stacked areas, or numbers (values).

- To view the details about a graph, hover over the metric color code that appears below the graph.

  The metric's details are displayed.
For more information about working with CloudWatch metrics, see Using Amazon CloudWatch Metrics in the Amazon CloudWatch User Guide.

Setting Alarms for Step Functions

You can use Amazon CloudWatch alarms to perform actions. For example, if you want to know when an alarm threshold is reached, you can set an alarm to send a notification to an Amazon SNS topic or to send an email when the StateMachinesFailed metric rises above a certain threshold.

To set an alarm on a metric

1. Sign in to the AWS Management Console and open the CloudWatch console.
2. Choose Metrics, and on the All Metrics tab, choose States.

If you ran any executions recently, you will see up to three types of metrics:

- Execution Metrics
- Activity Function Metrics
- Lambda Function Metrics

3. Choose a metric type to see a list of metrics.
4. Choose a metric, and then choose **Graphed metrics**.

5. Choose △ next to a metric on the list.

The **Create Alarm** page is displayed.
6. Enter the values for the **Alarm threshold** and **Actions**, and then choose **Create Alarm**.

For more information about setting and using CloudWatch alarms, see [Creating Amazon CloudWatch Alarms](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/monitoring/cloudwatch alarms.html) in the *Amazon CloudWatch User Guide*.

### CloudWatch Events for Step Functions Execution Status Changes

Amazon CloudWatch Events is an AWS service that enables you to respond to state changes in an AWS resource. You can use AWS Step Functions with CloudWatch Events in two ways.

You can configure Step Functions to emit CloudWatch Events when an execution status changes. This enables you to monitor your workflows without having to constantly poll using the `DescribeExecution` API. Based on changes in state machine executions you can use a CloudWatch Events target to start new state machine executions, call AWS Lambda functions, publish messages to Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topics, and more.

You can also configure a Step Functions state machine as a target in CloudWatch Events. This enables you to trigger an execution of a Step Functions workflow in response to an event from another AWS service.

For more information, see the [Amazon CloudWatch Events User Guide](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/events/index.html).

**Topics**

- [Step Functions Event Examples (p. 293)](#)
Step Functions Event Examples

The following are examples of Step Functions sending events to CloudWatch Events:

Topics

• Execution Started (p. 293)
• Execution Succeeded (p. 293)
• Execution Failed (p. 294)
• Execution Timed Out (p. 294)
• Execution Aborted (p. 295)

In each case, the detail section in the event data provides the same information as the DescribeExecution API. The status field indicates the status of the execution at the time the event was sent, one of RUNNING, SUCCEEDED, FAILED, TIMED_OUT, or ABORTED depending on the event emitted.

Execution Started

```
{
  "version": "0",
  "id": "315c1398-40ff-a850-213b-158f73e60175",
  "detail-type": "Step Functions Execution Status Change",
  "source": "aws.states",
  "account": "012345678912",
  "time": "2019-02-26T19:42:21Z",
  "region": "us-east-1",
  "resources": [
  ],
  "detail": {
    "name": "execution-name",
    "status": "RUNNING",
    "startDate": 1551225271984,
    "stopDate": null,
    "input": "{}",
    "output": null
  }
}
```

Execution Succeeded

```
{
  "version": "0",
  "id": "315c1398-40ff-a850-213b-158f73e60175",
  "detail-type": "Step Functions Execution Status Change",
  "source": "aws.states",
  "account": "012345678912",
  "time": "2019-02-26T19:42:21Z",
  "region": "us-east-1",
  "resources": [  
```
"detail": {
  "name": "execution-name",
  "status": "SUCCEEDED",
  "startDate": 1547148840101,
  "stopDate": 1547148840122,
  "input": "{}
  "output": "\"Hello World!\"
}

Execution Failed

{
  "version": "0",
  "id": "315c1398-40ff-a850-213b-158f73e60175",
  "detail-type": "Step Functions Execution Status Change",
  "source": "aws.states",
  "account": "012345678912",
  "time": "2019-02-26T19:42:21Z",
  "region": "us-east-1",
  "resources": [
  ],
  "detail": {
    "name": "execution-name",
    "status": "FAILED",
    "startDate": 1551225146847,
    "stopDate": 1551225151881,
    "input": "{}
    "output": null
  }

Execution Timed Out

{
  "version": "0",
  "id": "315c1398-40ff-a850-213b-158f73e60175",
  "detail-type": "Step Functions Execution Status Change",
  "source": "aws.states",
  "account": "012345678912",
  "time": "2019-02-26T19:42:21Z",
  "region": "us-east-1",
  "resources": [
  ],
  "detail": {
    "name": "execution-name",
    "status": "TIMED_OUT"
"startDate": 1551224926156,
"stopDate": 1551224927157,
"input": "{}
"output": null
}
}

**Execution Aborted**

```json
{
  "version": "0",
  "id": "315c1398-40ff-a850-213b-158f73e60175",
  "detail-type": "Step Functions Execution Status Change",
  "source": "aws.states",
  "account": "012345678912",
  "time": "2019-02-26T19:42:21Z",
  "region": "us-east-1",
  "resources": [
  ],
  "detail": {
    "name": "execution-name",
    "status": "ABORTED",
    "startDate": 1551225014968,
    "stopDate": 1551225017576,
    "input": "{}
    "output": null
  }
}
```

**Routing a Step Functions Event to a CloudWatch Events Target in the CloudWatch Events Console**

1. On the **Details** page of a state machine, choose **Actions**, **Create CloudWatch event rule**.

   ![Create CloudWatch event rule](image)

   Alternatively, open the CloudWatch console at [https://console.aws.amazon.com/cloudwatch/](https://console.aws.amazon.com/cloudwatch/). In the navigation pane, choose **Events, Rules**.

2. Choose **Create rule**.
3. Under **Event Source**, ensure **Event Pattern** is selected.
4. For **Service Name**, choose **Step Functions**.
5. For **Event Type**, choose **Step Functions Execution Status Change**.
6. Optionally, configure a specific status, state machine Amazon Resource Name (ARN), or execution ARN.
7. Under **Targets**, choose **Add target**, and select a target from the list. For example, you could launch a Lambda function, or start an execution of a Step Functions state machine.
8. Add detailed information for your specific target.
9. Choose **Configure details**. On the **Configure rule details** page, enter a **Name** and **Description**.
10. Choose **Create rule**.

## Logging Step Functions Using AWS CloudTrail

Step Functions is integrated with AWS CloudTrail, a service that provides a record of actions taken by a user, role, or an AWS service in Step Functions. CloudTrail captures all API calls for Step Functions as events, including calls from the Step Functions console and from code calls to the Step Functions APIs.

If you create a trail, you can enable continuous delivery of CloudTrail events to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket, including events for Step Functions. If you don't configure a trail, you can still view the most recent events in the CloudTrail console in **Event history**.

Using the information collected by CloudTrail, you can determine the request that was made to Step Functions, the IP address from which the request was made, who made the request, when it was made, and additional details.

To learn more about CloudTrail, see the [AWS CloudTrail User Guide](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/awscloudtrail/latest/userguide/).

### Step Functions Information in CloudTrail

CloudTrail is enabled on your AWS account when you create the account. When activity occurs in Step Functions, that activity is recorded in a CloudTrail event with other AWS service events in **Event history**.

You can view, search, and download recent events in your AWS account. For more information, see [Viewing Events with CloudTrail Event History](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/awscloudtrail/latest/userguide/).

For an ongoing record of events in your AWS account, including events for Step Functions, create a trail. A trail enables CloudTrail to deliver log files to an Amazon S3 bucket. By default, when you create a trail in the console, the trail applies to all AWS Regions. The trail logs events from all Regions in the AWS partition and delivers the log files to the Amazon S3 bucket that you specify. Additionally, you can configure other AWS services to further analyze and act on the event data collected in CloudTrail logs.

For more information, see the following:

- [Overview for Creating a Trail](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/awscloudtrail/latest/userguide/)
- [CloudTrail Supported Services and Integrations](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/awscloudtrail/latest/userguide/)
- [Configuring Amazon SNS Notifications for CloudTrail](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/awscloudtrail/latest/userguide/)
- [Receiving CloudTrail Log Files from Multiple Regions](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/awscloudtrail/latest/userguide/)
- [Receiving CloudTrail Log Files from Multiple Accounts](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/awscloudtrail/latest/userguide/)

Every event or log entry contains information about who generated the request. The identity information helps you determine the following:

- Whether the request was made with root or IAM user credentials
- Whether the request was made with temporary security credentials for a role or federated user
- Whether the request was made by another AWS service

For more information, see the [CloudTrail userIdentity Element](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/awscloudtrail/latest/userguide/).

### Example: Step Functions Log File Entries

A trail is a configuration that enables delivery of events as log files to an Amazon S3 bucket that you specify. CloudTrail log files contain one or more log entries. An event represents a single request from
any source and includes information about the requested action, the date and time of the action, request parameters, and so on. CloudTrail log files are not an ordered stack trace of the public API calls, so they don’t appear in any specific order.

**CreateActivity**

The following example shows a CloudTrail log entry that demonstrates the `CreateActivity` action.

```json
{
    "eventVersion": "1.04",
    "userIdentity": {
        "type": "IAMUser",
        "principalId": "AIDAJYDLOBV14EXAMPLE",
        "arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/test-user",
        "accountId": "123456789012",
        "accessKeyId": "AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
        "userName": "test-user"
    },
    "eventTime": "2016-10-28T01:17:56Z",
    "eventSource": "states.amazonaws.com",
    "eventName": "CreateActivity",
    "awsRegion": "us-east-1",
    "sourceIPAddress": "10.61.88.189",
    "userAgent": "Coral/Netty",
    "requestParameters": {
        "name": "OtherActivityPrefix.2016-10-27-18-16-56.894c791e-2ced-4cf4-8523-376469410c25"
    },
    "responseElements": {
        "creationDate": "Oct 28, 2016 1:17:56 AM"
    },
    "requestID": "37c67602-9cac-11e6-aed5-5b57d226e9ef",
    "eventID": "dc3beceef-d06d-499b-fc93-9b76500774",
    "eventType": "AwsApiCall",
    "recipientAccountId": "123456789012"
}
```

**CreateStateMachine**

The following example shows a CloudTrail log entry that demonstrates the `CreateStateMachine` action.

```json
{
    "eventVersion": "1.04",
    "userIdentity": {
        "type": "IAMUser",
        "principalId": "AIDAJYDLOBV14EXAMPLE",
        "arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/test-user",
        "accountId": "123456789012",
        "accessKeyId": "AKIAJL5C75K4ZEXAMPLE",
        "userName": "test-user"
    },
    "eventTime": "2016-10-28T01:18:07Z",
    "eventSource": "states.amazonaws.com",
    "eventName": "CreateStateMachine",
    "awsRegion": "us-east-1",
    "sourceIPAddress": "10.61.88.189",
    "userAgent": "Coral/Netty",
    "requestParameters": {
        "name": "testUser.2016-10-27-18-16-56.894c791e-2ced-4cf4-8523-376469410c25",
        "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/graphene/tests/graphene-execution-role",
        "executionName": "testExecution.2016-10-27-18-16-56.894c791e-2ced-4cf4-8523-376469410c25"
    }
}
```
DeleteActivity

The following example shows a CloudTrail log entry that demonstrates the DeleteActivity action.

```
{
   "eventVersion": "1.04",
   "userIdentity": {
      "type": "IAMUser",
      "principalId": "AIDAJYDLDBVBI4EXAMPLE",
      "arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/test-user",
      "accountId": "123456789012",
      "accessKeyId": "AKIAJL5C75K4ZEEXAMPLE",
      "userName": "test-user"
   },
   "eventTime": "2016-10-28T01:18:27Z",
   "eventSource": "states.amazonaws.com",
   "eventName": "DeleteActivity",
   "awsRegion": "us-east-1",
   "sourceIPAddress": "10.61.88.189",
   "userAgent": "Coral/Netty",
   "requestParameters": {
   },
   "responseElements": null,
   "requestID": "490374ea-9cac-11e6-aed5-5b57d226e9ef",
   "eventID": "e5eb9a3d-13bc-4fa1-9531-232d1914d263",
   "eventType": "AwsApiCall",
   "recipientAccountId": "123456789012"
}
```

DeleteStateMachine

The following example shows a CloudTrail log entry that demonstrates the DeleteStateMachine action.

```
{
   "eventVersion": "1.04",
   "userIdentity": {
      "type": "IAMUser",
      "principalId": "AIDAJABK5MKNKNAEXAMPLE",
      "arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/graphene/tests/test-user",
      "accountId": "123456789012",
      "accessKeyId": "AKIAJA2ELRVCPEEXAMPLE",
      "userName": "test-user"
   },
   "eventTime": "2016-10-28T01:17:37Z",
   "eventSource": "states.amazonaws.com",
   "eventName": "DeleteStateMachine",
   "awsRegion": "us-east-1",
   "sourceIPAddress": "10.61.88.189",
   "userAgent": "Coral/Netty",
   "requestParameters": {
      "creationDate": "Oct 28, 2016 1:18:07 AM"
   },
   "responseElements": {
      "creationDate": "Oct 28, 2016 1:18:07 AM"
   },
   "requestID": "3da6370c-9cac-11e6-aed5-5b57d226e9ef",
   "eventID": "84a0441d-fa06-4691-a60a-aab9e6d689c",
   "eventType": "AwsApiCall",
   "recipientAccountId": "123456789012"
}
```
StartExecution

The following example shows a CloudTrail log entry that demonstrates the StartExecution action.

```
{
  "eventVersion": "1.04",
  "userIdentity": {
    "type": "IAMUser",
    "principalId": "AIDAJYDLDBVB14EXAMPLE",
    "arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/test-user",
    "accountId": "123456789012",
    "accessKeyId": "AKIAJL5C75K4ZEXAMPLE",
    "userName": "test-user"
  },
  "eventTime": "2016-10-28T01:17:25Z",
  "eventSource": "states.amazonaws.com",
  "eventName": "StartExecution",
  "awsRegion": "us-east-1",
  "sourceIPAddress": "10.61.88.189",
  "userAgent": "Coral/Netty",
  "requestParameters": {
    "input": "{}",
    "name": "testUser.2016-10-27-18-16-26.6e229586-3698-4ce5-8d"
  },
  "responseElements": {
    "startDate": "Oct 28, 2016 1:17:25 AM",
  },
  "requestID": "264c6f08-9cac-11e6-aed5-5b57d226e9ef",
  "eventID": "30a20c8e-a3a1-4b07-9139-cd9cd73b5eb8",
  "eventType": "AwsApiCall",
  "recipientAccountId": "123456789012"
}
```

StopExecution

The following example shows a CloudTrail log entry that demonstrates the StopExecution action.

```
{
  "eventVersion": "1.04",
  "userIdentity": {
    "type": "IAMUser",
    "principalId": "AIDAJYDLDBVB14EXAMPLE",
    "arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/test-user",
    "accountId": "123456789012",
    "accessKeyId": "AKIAJL5C75K4ZEXAMPLE",
    "userName": "test-user"
  },
  "eventTime": "2016-10-28T01:17:25Z",
  "eventSource": "states.amazonaws.com",
  "eventName": "StopExecution",
  "awsRegion": "us-east-1",
  "sourceIPAddress": "10.61.88.189",
  "userAgent": "Coral/Netty",
  "requestParameters": {
    "input": "{}",
    "requestParameters": null,
    "responseElements": null,
    "requestID": "2cf23f3c-9cac-11e6-aed5-5b57d226e9ef",
    "eventID": "4a622d5c-e9cf-4051-90f2-4cdb69792cd8",
    "eventType": "AwsApiCall",
    "recipientAccountId": "123456789012"
  }
}
```
Logging Using CloudWatch Logs

Standard Workflows record execution history in AWS Step Functions, although you can optionally configure logging to Amazon CloudWatch Logs.

Unlike Standard Workflows, Express Workflows don't record execution history in AWS Step Functions. To see execution history and results for an Express Workflow, you must configure logging to Amazon CloudWatch Logs. Publishing logs doesn't block or slow down executions.

**Note**
When you configure logging, CloudWatch Logs charges will apply.

Configure Logging

When you create a Standard Workflow using the Step Functions console, it will not be configured to enable logging to CloudWatch Logs. An Express Workflow created using the Step Functions console will by default be configured to enable logging to CloudWatch Logs.

For Express workflows, Step Functions can create a role with the necessary AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy for CloudWatch Logs. If you create a Standard Workflow, or an Express Workflow using the API, CLI, or AWS CloudFormation, Step Functions will not enable logging by default, and you will need ensure your role has the necessary permissions.

For each execution started from the console, Step Functions provides a link to CloudWatch Logs, configured with the correct filter to fetch log events specific for that execution.

To configure logging, you can pass the `LoggingConfiguration` parameter when using `CreateStateMachine` or `UpdateStateMachine`. You can further analyze your data in CloudWatch Logs by using CloudWatch Logs Insights. For more information see Analyzing Log Data with CloudWatch Logs Insights.

**IAM Policies for Logging to CloudWatch Logs**

You will also need to configure your IAM role to have the proper permission to log to CloudWatch Logs. The following is an example policy you can use to configure your permissions.

```json
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": "cloudwatch:PutLogEvents",
            "Resource": "arn:aws:cloudwatch:*:123456789012:log-group:*:flowExecution.log"}
    ]
}
Log Levels

You can choose from OFF, ALL, ERROR, or FATAL. No event types log when set to OFF and all event types do when set to ALL. For ERROR and FATAL, see the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Type</th>
<th>All</th>
<th>ERROR</th>
<th>FATAL</th>
<th>OFF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ChoiceStateEntered</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ChoiceStateExited</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExecutionAborted</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExecutionFailed</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExecutionStarted</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExecutionSucceeded</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ExecutionTimedOut</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FailStateEntered</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LambdaFunctionFailed</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LambdaFunctionScheduled</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LambdaFunctionScheduleFailed</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LambdaFunctionStarted</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LambdaFunctionStartFailed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LambdaFunctionSucceeded</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LambdaFunctionTimedOut</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapIterationAborted</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapIterationFailed</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapIterationStarted</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapIterationSucceeded</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event Type</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>ERROR</td>
<td>FATAL</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapStateAborted</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapStateEntered</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapStateExited</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapStateFailed</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapStateStarted</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MapStateSucceeded</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ParallelStateAborted</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ParallelStateEntered</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ParallelStateExited</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ParallelStateFailed</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ParallelStateStarted</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ParallelStateSucceeded</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PassStateEntered</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PassStateExited</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SucceedStateEntered</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SucceedStateExited</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TaskFailed</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TaskScheduled</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TaskStarted</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TaskStartFailed</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TaskStateAborted</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TaskStateEntered</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TaskStateExited</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TaskSubmitFailed</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TaskSubmitted</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TaskSucceeded</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TaskTimedOut</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WaitStateAborted</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WaitStateEntered</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WaitStateExited</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Compliance Validation for AWS Step Functions

Third-party auditors assess the security and compliance of AWS Step Functions as part of multiple AWS compliance programs. These include SOC, PCI, FedRAMP, HIPAA, and others.

For a list of AWS services in scope of specific compliance programs, see AWS Services in Scope by Compliance Program. For general information, see AWS Compliance Programs.

You can download third-party audit reports using AWS Artifact. For more information, see Downloading Reports in AWS Artifact.

Your compliance responsibility when using Step Functions is determined by the sensitivity of your data, your company's compliance objectives, and applicable laws and regulations. AWS provides the following resources to help with compliance:

- Security and Compliance Quick Start Guides – These deployment guides discuss architectural considerations and provide steps for deploying security- and compliance-focused baseline environments on AWS.
- Architecting for HIPAA Security and Compliance Whitepaper – This whitepaper describes how companies can use AWS to create HIPAA-compliant applications.
- AWS Compliance Resources – This collection of workbooks and guides might apply to your industry and location.
- Evaluating Resources with Rules in the AWS Config Developer Guide – The AWS Config service assesses how well your resource configurations comply with internal practices, industry guidelines, and regulations.
- AWS Security Hub – This AWS service provides a comprehensive view of your security state within AWS that helps you check your compliance with security industry standards and best practices.

Resilience in AWS Step Functions

The AWS global infrastructure is built around AWS Regions and Availability Zones. AWS Regions provide multiple physically separated and isolated Availability Zones, which are connected with low-latency, high-throughput, and highly redundant networking. With Availability Zones, you can design and operate applications and databases that automatically fail over between zones without interruption. Availability Zones are more highly available, fault tolerant, and scalable than traditional single or multiple data center infrastructures.

For more information about AWS Regions and Availability Zones, see AWS Global Infrastructure.

In addition to the AWS global infrastructure, Step Functions offers several features to help support your data resiliency and backup needs.

Infrastructure Security in AWS Step Functions

As a managed service, AWS Step Functions is protected by the AWS global network security procedures that are described in the Amazon Web Services: Overview of Security Processes whitepaper.

You use AWS published API calls to access Step Functions through the network. Clients must support Transport Layer Security (TLS) 1.0 or later. We recommend TLS 1.2 or later. Clients must also support cipher suites with perfect forward secrecy (PFS) such as Ephemeral Diffie-Hellman (DHE) or Elliptic Curve Ephemeral Diffie-Hellman (ECDHE). Most modern systems such as Java 7 and later support these modes.
Additionally, requests must be signed by using an access key ID and a secret access key that is associated with an IAM principal. Or you can use the AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS) to generate temporary security credentials to sign requests.

You can call these API operations from any network location, but Step Functions does support resource-based access policies, which can include restrictions based on the source IP address. You can also use Step Functions policies to control access from specific Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC) endpoints or specific VPCs. Effectively, this isolates network access to a given Step Functions resource from only the specific VPC within the AWS network.

**Configuration and Vulnerability Analysis in AWS Step Functions**

Configuration and IT controls are a shared responsibility between AWS and you, our customer. For more information, see the AWS shared responsibility model.
Related Information

The following table lists related resources that you might find useful as you work with this service.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AWS Step Functions API Reference</td>
<td>Descriptions of API actions, parameters, and data types and a list of errors that the service returns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS Step Functions Command Line Reference</td>
<td>Descriptions of the AWS CLI commands that you can use to work with AWS Step Functions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product information for Step Functions</td>
<td>The primary webpage for information about Step Functions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discussion Forums</td>
<td>A community-based forum for developers to discuss technical questions related to Step Functions and other AWS services.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWS Premium Support Information</td>
<td>The primary webpage for information about AWS Premium Support, a one-on-one, fast-response support channel to help you build and run applications on AWS infrastructure services.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Document History

This section lists major changes to the *AWS Step Functions Developer Guide*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Date Changed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| New Feature | AWS Step Functions is now supported by AWS Serverless Application Model, making it easier to integrate workflow orchestration into your serverless applications. For more information, see:  
  - AWS Step Functions and AWS SAM (p. 184)  
  - AWS::Serverless::StateMachine  
  - AWS SAM Policy Templates                                                                                                                                  | May 27, 2020   |
| New Feature | AWS Step Functions has introduced a new synchronous invocation for nesting Step Functions executions. The new invocation, arn:aws:states::states:startExecution.sync:2, returns a JSON object. The original invocation, arn:aws:states::states:startExecution.sync, continues to be supported, and returns a JSON-escaped string. For more information, see:  
  - Manage AWS Step Functions Executions as an Integrated Service (p. 178)                              | May 19, 2020   |
| New Feature | AWS Step Functions now integrates with AWS CodeBuild. For more information, see:  
  - Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144)  
  - Call AWS CodeBuild with Step Functions (p. 177)  
  - Supported AWS Service Integrations for Step Functions (p. 153)                                                                                   | May 5, 2020    |
| Update      | You can now configure logging to Amazon CloudWatch Logs for Standard workflows. For more information, see:  
  - Logging Using CloudWatch Logs (p. 300)                                                                                                                  | February 25, 2020 |
| New feature | AWS Step Functions can now be accessed without requiring a public IP address, directly from Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (VPC). For more information, see:  
  - Amazon VPC Endpoints for Step Functions (p. 257)                                                                                                  | December 23, 2019 |
| New feature | Express Workflows are a new workflow type, suitable for high-volume event processing workloads such as IoT data ingestion, streaming data processing and transformation, and mobile application backends. For more information, review the following new and updated topics.  
  - Standard vs. Express Workflows (p. 89)  
  - At-Least-Once Workflow Execution (p. 90)  
  - Getting Started with Step Functions (p. 13)  
  - Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144)  
  - Supported AWS Service Integrations for Step Functions (p. 153)                                                                                   | December 3, 2019 |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Date Changed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
|             | • Process High-Volume Messages from Amazon SQS (Express Workflows) (p. 225)  
|             | • Selective Checkpointing Example (Express Workflows) (p. 229)  
|             | • Quotas (p. 243)  
|             | • Quotas for Standard Workflows (p. 243)  
|             | • Quotas for Express Workflows (p. 245)  
|             | • Logging Using CloudWatch Logs (p. 300)  
|             | • AWS Step Functions API Reference  
|             | • CreateStateMachine  
|             | • UpdateStateMachine  
|             | • DescribeStateMachine  
|             | • DescribeStateMachineForExecution  
|             | • StopExecution  
|             | • DescribeExecution  
|             | • GetExecutionHistory  
|             | • ListExecutions  
|             | • ListStateMachines  
|             | • StartExecution  
|             | • CloudWatchLogsLogGroup  
|             | • LogDestination  
|             | • LoggingConfiguration                                                                                                                                                                                             |              |
| New feature | AWS Step Functions now integrates with Amazon EMR. For more information, see:  
|             | • Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144)  
|             | • Call Amazon EMR with Step Functions (p. 169)  
|             | • Supported AWS Service Integrations for Step Functions (p. 153)                                                                                      | November 19, 2019 |
| Update      | AWS Step Functions has released the AWS Step Functions Data Science SDK. For more information, see the following.                                                                                           | November 7, 2019 |
|             | • Project on Github  
|             | • SDK Documentation  
|             | • The following Example Notebooks, which are available in the Amazon SageMaker console and the related GitHub project.                                                                                  |              |
|             | • hello_world_workflow.ipynb  
|             | • machine_learning Workflow_abalone.ipynb  
|             | • training_pipeline_pytorch_mnist.ipynb                                                                                                                                                                         |              |
| Update      | Step Functions now supports more API actions for Amazon SageMaker, and includes two new sample projects to demonstrate the functionality. For more information, see the following.                                   | October 3, 2019 |
|             | • Manage Amazon SageMaker with Step Functions (p. 164)  
|             | • Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144)  
|             | • Train a Machine Learning Model (p. 214)  
<p>|             | • Tune a Machine Learning Model (p. 219)                                                                                                                                                                         |              |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Date Changed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>Step Functions includes a new <code>Map</code> state type. You can use a <code>Map</code> state to run a series of steps for each item in a JSON array in the input. For more information, see the following.</td>
<td>September 18, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Map State (p. 114)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Map State Example (p. 115)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Map State Tutorial (p. 79)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Map State Input and Output Processing (p. 117)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ItemsPath (p. 124)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Context Object Data for Map States (p. 134)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Map State Sample Project (p. 209)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>Step Functions supports starting new workflow executions by calling <code>StartExecution</code> as an integrated service API. See:</td>
<td>August 12, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Start Workflow Executions from a Task State (p. 136)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Manage AWS Step Functions Executions as an Integrated Service (p. 178)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• IAM Policies for Starting Step Functions Workflow Executions (p. 281)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>Step Functions includes the ability to pass a task token to integrated services, and pause the execution until that task token is returned with <code>SendTaskSuccess</code> or <code>SendTaskFailure</code>. See:</td>
<td>May 23, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Service Integration Patterns (p. 146)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Wait for a Callback with the Task Token (p. 147)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Callback Pattern Example (Amazon SQS, Amazon SNS, Lambda) (p. 200)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Supported AWS Service Integrations for Step Functions (p. 153)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Deploying an Example Human Approval Project (p. 69)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Service Integration Metrics (p. 287)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Step Functions now provides a way to access dynamic information about your current execution directly in the &quot;Parameters&quot; field of a state definition. See:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Context Object (p. 133)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pass Context Object Nodes as Parameters (p. 152)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>Step Functions supports CloudWatch Events for execution status changes, see:</td>
<td>May 8, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• CloudWatch Events for Step Functions Execution Status Changes (p. 292)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Amazon CloudWatch Events User Guide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>Step Functions supports IAM permissions using tags. For more information, see:</td>
<td>March 5, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Tagging in Step Functions (p. 181)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Tag-based Policies (p. 283)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Date Changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>New feature</strong></td>
<td>Step Functions Local is now available. You can run Step Functions on your local machine for testing and development. Step Functions Local is available for download as either a Java application, or as a Docker image. See Setting Up Step Functions Local (Downloadable Version) (p. 5).</td>
<td>February 4, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>New feature</strong></td>
<td>AWS Step Functions is now available in the Beijing and Ningxia regions. See Supported Regions (p. 2).</td>
<td>January 15, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>New feature</strong></td>
<td>Step Functions supports resource tagging to help track your cost allocation. You can tag state machines on the Details page, or through API actions. See Tagging in Step Functions (p. 181).</td>
<td>January 7, 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>New feature</strong></td>
<td>AWS Step Functions is now available in the Europe (Paris), and South America (São Paulo) regions. See Supported Regions (p. 2).</td>
<td>December 13, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>New feature</strong></td>
<td>AWS Step Functions is now available the Europe (Stockholm) region. See Supported Regions (p. 2) for a list of supported regions.</td>
<td>December 12, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>New feature</strong></td>
<td>You can now easily configure and generate a state definition for integrated services when editing your state definition. For more information, see:</td>
<td>December 10, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Code Snippets (p. 152)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Using Code Snippets (p. 66)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>New feature</strong></td>
<td>Step Functions now integrates with some AWS services. You can now directly call and pass parameters to the API of these integrated services from a task state in the Amazon States Language. For more information, see:</td>
<td>November 29, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Service Integrations with AWS Step Functions (p. 144)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Pass Parameters to a Service API (p. 150)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Supported AWS Service Integrations for Step Functions (p. 153)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Update</strong></td>
<td>Improved the description of TimeoutSeconds and HeartbeatSeconds in the documentation for task states. See Task (p. 95).</td>
<td>October 24, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Update</strong></td>
<td>Improved the description for the Maximum execution history size limit and provided a link to the related best practices topic.</td>
<td>October 17, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Quotas Related to State Machine Executions (p. 243)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Avoid Reaching the History Quota (p. 241)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Update</strong></td>
<td>Added a new tutorial to the AWS Step Functions documentation: See Starting a State Machine Execution in Response to Amazon S3 Events (p. 42).</td>
<td>September 25, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Update</strong></td>
<td>Removed the entry Maximum executions displayed in Step Functions console from the limits documentation. See Quotas for Standard Workflows (p. 243).</td>
<td>September 13, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Update</strong></td>
<td>Added a best practices topic to the AWS Step Functions documentation on improving latency when polling for activity tasks. See Avoid Latency When Polling for Activity Tasks (p. 242).</td>
<td>August 30, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Update</strong></td>
<td>Improved the AWS Step Functions topic on activities and activity workers. See Activities (p. 99).</td>
<td>August 29, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Update</strong></td>
<td>Improved the AWS Step Functions topic on CloudTrail integration. See Logging Step Functions Using AWS CloudTrail (p. 296).</td>
<td>August 7, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Date Changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Added JSON examples to AWS CloudFormation tutorial. See Creating a Lambda State Machine for Step Functions Using AWS CloudFormation (p. 24).</td>
<td>June 23, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Added a new topic on handling Lambda service errors. See Handle Lambda Service Exceptions (p. 241).</td>
<td>June 20, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>AWS Step Functions is now available the Asia Pacific (Mumbai) region. See Supported Regions (p. 2) for a list of supported regions.</td>
<td>June 28, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>AWS Step Functions is now available the AWS GovCloud (US-West) region. See Supported Regions (p. 2) for a list of supported regions. For information about using Step Functions in the AWS GovCloud (US-West) Region, see AWS GovCloud (US) Endpoints.</td>
<td>June 28, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Improved documentation on error handling for Parallel states. See Error Handling (p. 114).</td>
<td>June 20, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Improved documentation about Input and Output processing in Step Functions. Learn how to use InputPath, ResultPath, and OutputPath to control the flow of JSON through your workflows, states, and tasks. See:</td>
<td>June 7, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Input and Output Processing in Step Functions (p. 120)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• ResultPath (p. 125)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Improved code examples for parallel states. See Parallel (p. 111).</td>
<td>June 4, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>You can now monitor API and Service metrics in CloudWatch. See Monitoring Step Functions Using CloudWatch (p. 284).</td>
<td>May 25, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>StartExecution, StopExecution, and StateTransition now have increased throttling limits in the following regions:</td>
<td>May 16, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• US East (N. Virginia)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• US West (Oregon)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Europe (Ireland)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For more information see Quotas for Standard Workflows (p. 243).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>AWS Step Functions is now available the US West (N. California) and Asia Pacific (Seoul) regions. See Supported Regions (p. 2) for a list of supported regions.</td>
<td>May 5, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Updated procedures and images to match changes to the interface.</td>
<td>April 25, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Added a new tutorial that shows how to start a new execution to continue your work. See Continuing as a New Execution (p. 57). This tutorial describes a design pattern that can help avoid some service limitations. See Avoid Reaching the History Quota (p. 241).</td>
<td>April 19, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Improved introduction to states documentation by adding conceptual information about state machines. See States (p. 90).</td>
<td>March 9, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Date Changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>In addition to HTML, PDF, and Kindle, the AWS Step Functions Developer Guide is available on GitHub. To leave feedback, choose the GitHub icon in the upper right-hand corner.</td>
<td>March 2, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Added a topic describing other resources relating to Step Functions. See Related Information (p. 305).</td>
<td>February 20, 2018</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| New feature| • When you create a new state machine, you must acknowledge that AWS Step Functions will create an IAM role which allows access to your Lambda functions.  
• Updated the following tutorials to reflect the minor changes in the state machine creation workflow:  
  • Getting Started with Step Functions (p. 13)  
  • Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20)  
  • Creating an Activity State Machine Using Step Functions (p. 32)  
  • Handling Error Conditions Using a Step Functions State Machine (p. 36)  
  • Iterating a Loop Using Lambda (p. 51)                                                                 | February 19, 2018     |
| Update     | Added a topic that describes an example activity worker written in Ruby. This implementation can be used to create a Ruby activity worker directly, or as a design pattern for creating an activity worker in another language.  
See Example Activity Worker in Ruby (p. 100).                                                                                           | February 6, 2018      |
| Update     | Added a new tutorial describing a design pattern that uses a Lambda function to iterate a count.  
See Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20).                                                                       | January 31, 2018      |
| Update     | Updated content on IAM permissions to include DescribeStateMachineForExecution and UpdateStateMachine APIs.  
See Creating Granular IAM Permissions for Non-Admin Users (p. 254).                                                                         | January 26, 2018      |
| Update     | Added newly available regions: Canada (Central), Asia Pacific (Singapore).  
See Supported Regions (p. 2).                                                                                                             | January 25, 2018      |
| Update     | Updated tutorials and procedures to reflect that IAM allows you to select Step Functions as a role.                                                                                                        | January 24, 2018      |
| Update     | Added a new Best Practices topic that suggests not passing large payloads between states.  
See Use ARNs Instead of Passing Large Payloads (p. 240).                                                                                   | January 23, 2018      |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Date Changed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Update          | Corrected procedures to match updated interface for creating a state machine:  
  - Getting Started with Step Functions (p. 13)  
  - Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20)  
  - Creating an Activity State Machine Using Step Functions (p. 32)  
  - Handling Error Conditions Using a Step Functions State Machine (p. 36) | January 17, 2018 |
| New Feature     | You can use Sample Projects to quickly provision state machines and all related AWS resources. See Sample Projects for Step Functions (p. 186), Available sample projects include:  
  - Poll for Job Status (Lambda, AWS Batch) (p. 196)  
  - Task Timer (Lambda, Amazon SNS) (p. 198)  
  **Note**  
  These sample projects and related documentation replace tutorials that described implementing the same functionality. | January 11, 2018 |
| Update          | Added a Best Practices section that includes information on avoiding stuck executions. See Best Practices for Step Functions (p. 240). | January 5, 2018 |
| Update          | Added a note on how retries can affect pricing:  
  **Note**  
  Retries are treated as state transitions. For information about how state transitions affect billing, see Step Functions Pricing. | December 8, 2017 |
| Update          | Added information related to resource names:  
  **Note**  
  Step Functions allows you to create state machine, execution, and activity names that contain non-ASCII characters. These non-ASCII names don’t work with Amazon CloudWatch. To ensure that you can track CloudWatch metrics, choose a name that uses only ASCII characters. | December 6, 2017 |
<p>| Update          | Improved security overview information and added a topic on granular IAM permissions. See Security in AWS Step Functions (p. 251) and Creating Granular IAM Permissions for Non-Admin Users (p. 254). | November 27, 2017 |
| New Feature     | You can update an existing state machine. See Update a State Machine (p. 15). | November 15, 2017 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Date Changed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Update | Added a note to clarify *Lambda.Unknown* errors and linked to the Lambda documentation in the following sections:  
  - *Error Names* (p. 137)  
  - *Step 4: Create a State Machine with a Catch Field* (p. 38) | October 17, 2017 |
| Note   | Unhandled errors in Lambda are reported as *Lambda.Unknown* in the error output. These include out-of-memory errors and function timeouts. You can match on *Lambda.Unknown*, *States.ALL*, or *States.TaskFailed* to handle these errors. When Lambda hits the maximum number of invocations, the error is *Lambda.TooManyRequestsException*. For more information about Lambda *Handled* and *Unhandled* errors, see *FunctionError* in the AWS Lambda Developer Guide. |               |
| Update | Corrected and clarified IAM instructions and updated the screenshots in all tutorials (p. 17). | October 11, 2017 |
| Update | • Added new screenshots for state machine execution results to reflect changes in the Step Functions console. Rewrote the Lambda instructions in the following tutorials to reflect changes in the Lambda console:  
  - *Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda* (p. 20)  
  - Creating a Job Status Poller  
  - Creating a Task Timer  
  - *Handling Error Conditions Using a Step Functions State Machine* (p. 36)  
  • Corrected and clarified information about creating state machines in the following sections:  
    - *Getting Started with Step Functions* (p. 13)  
    - *Creating an Activity State Machine Using Step Functions* (p. 32) | October 6, 2017 |
| Update | Rewrote the IAM instructions in the following sections to reflect changes in the IAM console:  
  - *How AWS Step Functions Works with IAM* (p. 254)  
  - *Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda* (p. 20)  
  - Creating a Job Status Poller  
  - Creating a Task Timer  
  - *Handling Error Conditions Using a Step Functions State Machine* (p. 36)  
  - *Creating a Step Functions API Using API Gateway* (p. 47) | October 5, 2017 |
| Update | Rewrote the *State Machine Data* (p. 118) section. | September 28, 2017 |
| New feature | The limits related to API action throttling (p. 244) are increased for all regions where Step Functions is available. | September 18, 2017 |
| Update | • Corrected and clarified information about starting new executions in all tutorials.  
  • Corrected and clarified information in the *Quotas Related to Accounts* (p. 248) section. | September 14, 2017 |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Date Changed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Corrected and clarified information in the Templates in Step Functions (p. 181) section.</td>
<td>September 1, 2017</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Update       | Rewrote the following tutorials to reflect changes in the Lambda console:  
• Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20)  
• Handling Error Conditions Using a Step Functions State Machine (p. 36)  
• Creating a Job Status Poller                                                                                                       | August 28, 2017 |
| New feature  | Step Functions is available in Europe (London).                                                                                                                                                    | August 23, 2017 |
| New feature  | The visual workflows of state machines let you zoom in, zoom out, and center the graph.                                                                                                                | August 21, 2017 |
| New feature  | **Important**  
An execution can't use the name of another execution for 90 days.  
When you make multiple StartExecution calls with the same name, the new execution doesn't run and the following rules apply.  
| Execution State | **Input Type**  
Open  
Closed  
Identical   | Success  
ExecutionAlreadyExists  
Different   | ExecutionAlreadyExists  
ExecutionAlreadyExists  
For more information, see the name request parameter of the StartExecution API action in the AWS Step Functions API Reference. | August 18, 2017 |
| Update       | Added information about an alternative way of passing the state machine ARN to the Creating a Step Functions API Using API Gateway (p. 47) tutorial.                                                    | August 17, 2017 |
| Update       | Added the new Creating a Job Status Poller tutorial.                                                                                                                                             | August 10, 2017 |
| New feature  | • Step Functions emits the ExecutionThrottled CloudWatch metric. For more information, see Monitoring Step Functions Using CloudWatch (p. 284).  
• Added the Quotas Related to State Throttling (p. 245) section.                                                                   | August 3, 2017 |
<p>| Update       | Updated the instructions in the Step 1: Create an IAM Role for API Gateway (p. 47) section.                                                                                                          | July 18, 2017  |
| Update       | Corrected and clarified information in the Choice (p. 106) section.                                                                                                                                | June 23, 2017  |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Date Changed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Added information about using resources under other AWS accounts to the following tutorials:</td>
<td>June 22, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Creating a Lambda State Machine for Step Functions Using AWS CloudFormation (p. 24)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Creating an Activity State Machine Using Step Functions (p. 32)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Handling Error Conditions Using a Step Functions State Machine (p. 36)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Corrected and clarified information in the following sections:</td>
<td>June 21, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Getting Started with Step Functions (p. 13)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Handling Error Conditions Using a Step Functions State Machine (p. 36)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• States (p. 90)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Error Handling in Step Functions (p. 137)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Rewrote all tutorials to match the Step Functions console refresh.</td>
<td>June 12, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>Step Functions is available in Asia Pacific (Sydney).</td>
<td>June 8, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Restructured the Amazon States Language (p. 92) section.</td>
<td>June 7, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Corrected and clarified information in the Creating an Activity State Machine Using Step Functions (p. 32) section.</td>
<td>June 6, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Corrected the code examples in the Examples Using Retry and Using Catch (p. 141) section.</td>
<td>June 5, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Restructured this guide using AWS documentation standards.</td>
<td>May 31, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Corrected and clarified information in the Parallel (p. 111) section.</td>
<td>May 25, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Merged the Paths and Filters sections into the Input and Output Processing in Step Functions (p. 120) section.</td>
<td>May 24, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Corrected and clarified information in the Templates in Step Functions (p. 181) section.</td>
<td>May 16, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Corrected and clarified information in the Monitoring Step Functions Using CloudWatch (p. 284) section.</td>
<td>May 15, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Updated the GreeterActivities.java worker code in the Creating an Activity State Machine Using Step Functions (p. 32) tutorial.</td>
<td>May 9, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Added an introductory video to the What Is AWS Step Functions? (p. 1) section.</td>
<td>April 19, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Date Changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Corrected and clarified information in the following tutorials:</td>
<td>April 19, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Getting Started with Step Functions (p. 13)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Creating an Activity State Machine Using Step Functions (p. 32)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Handling Error Conditions Using a Step Functions State Machine (p. 36)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Added information about Lambda templates to the Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20) and Handling Error Conditions Using a Step Functions State Machine (p. 36) tutorials.</td>
<td>April 6, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Changed the &quot;Maximum input or result data size&quot; limit to &quot;Maximum input or result data size for a task, state, or execution&quot; (32,768 characters). For more information, see Quotas Related to Task Executions (p. 244).</td>
<td>March 31, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>• Step Functions supports executing state machines by setting Step Functions as Amazon CloudWatch Events targets.</td>
<td>March 21, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>• Added the Periodically Start a State Machine Execution Using CloudWatch Events (p. 41) tutorial.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>• Step Functions allows Lambda function error handling as the preferred error handling method.</td>
<td>March 16, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>• Updated the Handling Error Conditions Using a Step Functions State Machine (p. 36) tutorial and the Error Handling in Step Functions (p. 137) section.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>Step Functions is available in Europe (Frankfurt).</td>
<td>March 7, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Reorganized the topics in the table of contents and updated the following tutorials:</td>
<td>February 23, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Getting Started with Step Functions (p. 13)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Creating a Step Functions State Machine That Uses Lambda (p. 20)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Creating an Activity State Machine Using Step Functions (p. 32)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Handling Error Conditions Using a Step Functions State Machine (p. 36)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>• The State Machines page of the Step Functions console includes the Copy to New and Delete buttons.</td>
<td>February 23, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>• Updated the screenshots to match the console changes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>• Step Functions supports creating APIs using API Gateway.</td>
<td>February 14, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>• Added the Creating a Step Functions API Using API Gateway (p. 47) tutorial.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>• Step Functions supports integration with AWS CloudFormation.</td>
<td>February 10, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>• Added the Creating a Lambda State Machine for Step Functions Using AWS CloudFormation (p. 24) tutorial.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Clarified the current behavior of the ResultPath and OutputPath fields in relation to Parallel states.</td>
<td>February 6, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Date Changed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>• Clarified state machine naming restrictions in tutorials.</td>
<td>January 5, 2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Corrected some code examples.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update</td>
<td>Updated Lambda function examples to use the latest programming model.</td>
<td>December 9, 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New feature</td>
<td>The initial release of Step Functions.</td>
<td>December 1, 2016</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AWS glossary

For the latest AWS terminology, see the AWS glossary in the AWS General Reference.